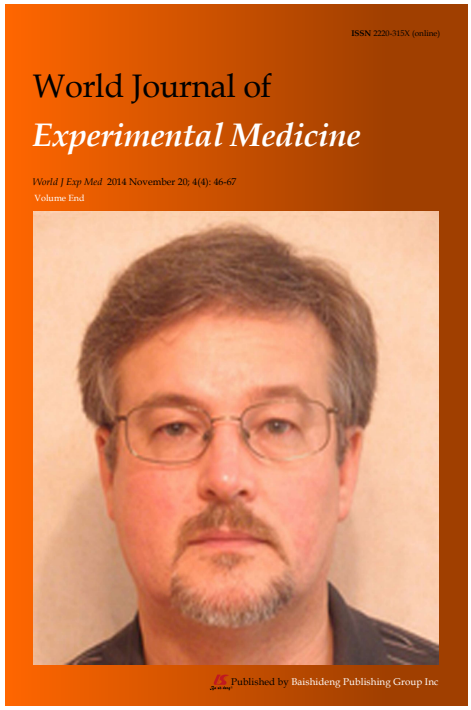
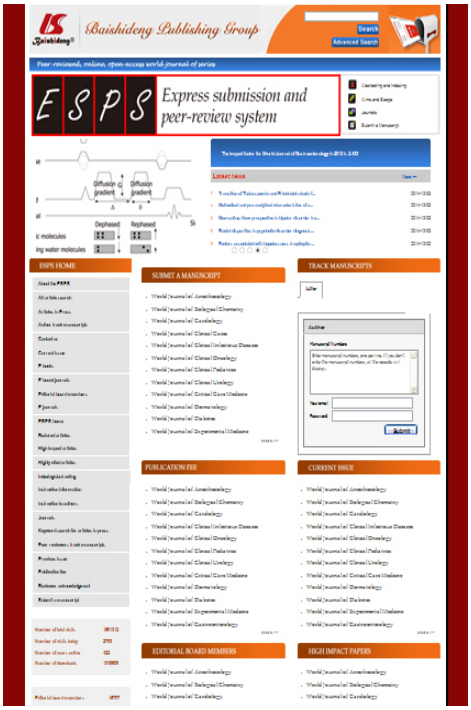
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

2014 Bound Volume 4 Issue 1-4: 1-67





Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of experimental medicine

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Experimental Medicine* Editorial Board consists of 393 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in experimental medicine. They are from 43 countries, including Argentina (4), Australia (11), Belgium (4), Benin (1), Brazil (4), Canada (8), China (44), Croatia (2), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (2), Finland (3), France (12), Germany (14), Greece (9), Hungary (1), India (14), Iran (1), Ireland (2), Israel (7), Italy (30), Japan (27), Kuwait (1), Lebanon (1), Malaysia (3), Mexico (4), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Norway (4), Portugal (2), Rwanda (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Serbia (1), Singapore (1), Slovenia (2), South Korea (27), Spain (11), Sweden (7), Switzerland (3), Turkey (10), Ukraine (1), United Kingdom (14), and United States (87).

Neven Zarkovic, *Zagreb*

Czech Republic

Jan Bernardy, *Brno*
Jaroslav Mokry, *Hradec Kralove*

Denmark

Shan Gao, *Aarhus*
Per Hildebrandt, *Frederiksberg*

Egypt

Nervana Samy, *Dokki*
Ahmad Settin, *Mansoura*

Finland

Terho J Lehtimäki, *Tamper*
Jami Mandelin, *Helsinki*
Thomas Wirth, *Kuopio*

France

Nadia Alfaidy, *Grenoble*
Abdel Aouacheria, *Pierre-Benite*
Nicolas Barnich, *Ferrand*
Philippe Bouvet, *Lyon*
Jean-Marc Cavaillon, *Paris*
Jean-Marc Egly, *Illkirch*
Guido Kroemer, *Paris*
Laurent Lescaudron, *Nantes*
Cécilia Maubaret, *Bordeaux cedex*
Patrick Midoux, *Orléans*
Alain Roger Thierry, *Montpellie*
Mohamed Zaiou, *Nancy*

Germany

Sorin Armeanu-Ebinger, *Tübingen*
Edwin Bölke, *Düsseldorf*
Magali Cucchiarini, *Homburg*
Christian Doehn, *Lübeck*
Thévenod Frank, *Witten*
Alexander Hanke, *Hannover*
Mohamed Hassan, *Duesseldorf*
Benjamin Joachim Kienast, *Hamburg*
Matthias Kohl, *Villingen-Schwenninge*
Sawa Kostin, *Bad Nauheim*
Hans W Müller, *Düsseldorf*
Nikolai G Rainov, *Augsburg*
Cassian Sitaru, *Freiburg*
Kurt S Zaenker, *Witten*

Greece

Effie K Basdra, *Athens*
Maria Dalamaga, *Athens*
Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Don Mark Estes, *Athens*
Theofilos M Kolettis, *Ioannina*
Michael Koutsilieris, *Athens*
Anastasios K Markopoulos, *Thessaloniki*
Issidora Papassideri, *Athens*
Panagiotis J Vlachostergios, *Larissa*

Hungary

Lacza Zsombor, *Budapest*

India

Amitava nil Chatterjee, *Kolkata*
Malay Chatterjee, *Kolkata*
Vijay Chauthaiwale, *Ahmedabad*
Bibhu Ranjan Das, *Mumbai*
Satya N Das, *New Delhi*
Umesh Datta Gupta, *Agra*
Balraj Mittal, *Lucknow*
Krishnadas Nandagopal, *Kolkata*
M Owais, *Aligarh*
Kedar Datt Pandey, *Izatnagar*
Syed Ibrahim Rizvi, *Allahabad*
Sandhya Sitasawad, *Pune*
Shailendra Kumar Verma, *Gwalior*
Rajesh Vijayvergiya, *Chandigarh*

Iran

Nima Rezaei, *Tehran*

Ireland

Michael C Berndt, *Dublin*
Steven G Gray, *Dublin*

Israel

Mary Bakhanashvili, *Tel Hashomer*
Elena Feinstein, *Ness Ziona*
Eran Meshorer, *Jerusalem*
Majed Odeh, *Haifa*
Gili Regev-Yochay, *Tel Aviv-Yafo*
Shimon Slavin, *Tel Aviv*
Hermona Soreq, *Jerusalem*

Italy

Carvalho Agostinho, *Perugia*
Alessandro Busca, *Turin*
Mario Cruciani, *Verona*
Giovanni Di Salvo, *Naples*
Francesco Dieli, *Palermo*
Paolo Durando, *Genoa*
Tagliabue Elda, *Milan*
Amalia Forte, *Naples*
Franco Frati, *Perugia*
Umberto Galderisi, *Naples*
Gabriele Grassi, *Trieste*
Fabio Grizzi, *Rozzano*
Agelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Lidia Larizza, *Milano*
Angelo Martino, *Rome*
Emanuela Masini, *Florence*
Sebastiano Mercadante, *Palermo*
Alberto Migliore, *Rome*
Fortunato Morabito, *Cosenza*
Pasquale Pagliaro, *Torino*
Enrico Pola, *Rome*
Francesco Recchia, *Avezzano*
Domenico Ribatti, *Bari*
Carlo Riccardi, *Perugia*
Gaetano Santulli, *Naples*
Luca Steardo, *Rome*
Fabrizio Stocchi, *Rome*
Giovanni Tarantino, *Naples*
Claudio Tiribelli, *Trieste*
Vincenzo Toschi, *Milano*

Japan

Winn Aung, *Chiba*
Hiroshi Fukazawa, *Mito*
Hideaki Hara, *Gifu*
Toshio Hattori, *Sendai*
Nakashima Hideki, *Kanagawa*
Atsushi Hosui, *Osaka*
Peng Huang, *Okayama*
Kenji Kabashima, *Kyoto*
Yosuke Kakisaka, *Sendai*
Hiroshi Kanno, *Yokohama*
Nanako Kawaguchi, *Tokyo*
Takumi Kawaguchi, *Kurum*
Young Hak Kim, *Kyoto*
Masahiro Kohzuki, *Sendai*
Shigeo Koido, *Chiba*
Tomoyoshi Komiya, *Kitamoto Saitama*
Ken-ichiro Kosai, *Kagoshima*
Hiroshi Mizuno, *Tokyo*
Ryuichi Morishita, *Osaka*
Hiroshi Munakata, *Osakasayama*
Toshi Nagata, *Hamamatsu*
Misa Nakamura, *Osaka*
Masaaki Takamura, *Niigata*
Masakazu Toi, *Kyoto*
Toshimasa Uemura, *Ibaraki*
Kiyotsugu Yoshida, *Tokyo*
Ming Zhou, *Akita*

Kuwait

Gaber Ziada, *Kuwait*

Lebanon

Hala Gali-Muhtasib, *Beirut*

Malaysia

Gam Lay Harn, *Penang*
Kamsiah Jaarin, *Kuala Lumpur*
H S Nagaraja, *Kuala Lumpur*

Mexico

Martha P G Arreola, *Jalisco*
Javier Camacho, *Mexico City*
José F Muñoz-Valle, *Jalisco*
Eduardo Pérez-Campos, *Oaxaca*

Netherlands

Reinoud Gosens, *Groningen*
Anya NicAoidh Milne, *Utrecht*
Esmaeil Mortaz, *Utrecht*
C F M Sier, *Leiden*
Ruurd Torensma, *Nijmegen*
Frank Wagener, *Nijmegen*

New Zealand

Madhav Bhatia, *Christchurch*

Norway

Brynjar Foss, *Stavanger*
Kristian Gundersen, *Oslo*
Azzam A Maghazachi, *Oslo*
Leiv Ose, *Oslo*

Portugal

Fatima Baltazar, *Braga*
Fani Sousa, *Covilhã*

Rwanda

Wondatir Nigatu, *Kigali*

Saudi Arabia

Jaffar Ali Al-Tawfiq, *Dhahran*
Mostafa M El-Naggar, *Jazan*

Serbia

Lidija Radenovic, *Belgrade*

Singapore

Ivy Ho, *Singapore*

Slovenia

Damjan Glavac, *Ljubljana*
Srdjan Novaković, *Ljubljana*

South Korea

Dalwoong Choi, *Seoul*
Kang-Yell Choi, *Seoul*
Sangdun Choi, *Suwon*
Young-Hwa Chung, *Busan*
Cecil Czerkinsky, *Seoul*
Joohun Ha, *Seoul*
Kwon-Soo Ha, *Chuncheon*
Eui-Bae Jeung, *Cheongju*
Eun-Jung Jin, *Jeonbuk*
Chang-Duk Jun, *Gwangju*
Min Hyung Jung, *Seoul*
Sung-Chul Jung, *Seoul*
Young Do Jung, *Kwangju*
Hyung-Ryong Kim, *Chonbuk*
Jae Ho Kim, *Yangsan*
Jung Mogg Kim, *Seoul*
Kyu-Won Kim, *Seoul*
Se-Kwon Kim, *Busan*
Jong-Young Kwak, *Busan*
Jeung-Hoon Lee, *Daejeon*
Jung Weon Lee, *Seoul*
Seong-Wook Lee, *Yongin*
Soo Young Lee, *Seoul*
Do Sik Min, *Pusan*
Yunbae Pak, *Jinju*
Baik Lin Seong, *Seoul*
Soon Young Shin, *Seoul*

Spain

Salvador F Aliño, *Valencia*
Isabel Andia, *Zamudio Vizcaya*
Jaime Arias, *Madrid*
Javier Arias-Diaz, *Madrid*
Vicente Felipo, *Valencia*
J Alfredo Martínez, *Navarra*
Miguel Ángel Medina, *Málaga*
Jose Obeso, *Navarra*
Jose Prados, *Granada*
Osta Pinzolas Rosario, *Zaragoza*
Jose C Segovia, *Madrid*

Sweden

Karl O Fagerstrom, *Kagerod*
Robert Hahn, *Tullinge*
Susanne Jacobsson, *Örebro*
Stefan Karlsson, *Lund*
Marek J Los, *Linkoping*
Jin-Jing Pei, *Tumba*
Xiao-Feng Sun, *Linköping*

Switzerland

Florian Bihl, *Bellinzona*
Witold Kilarski, *Lausanne*
Ioannis A Voutsadakis, *Lausanne*

Turkey

Ali Kudret Adiloglu, *Ankara*
Mutay Aslan, *Antalya*
Hakan Erdem, *Istanbul*
Semin Melahat Fenkci, *Denizli*
Askin Hekimoglu, *Diyarbakir*
Suleyman Serdar Koca, *Elazig*
Cuneyt Narin, *Konya*
Mustafa Taskesen, *Diyarbakir*
Mehmet Tokac, *Konya*
Selma Yilmazer, *Istanbul*

Ukraine

Tamara M Kuchmerovska, *Kyiv*

United Kingdom

Charles W Archer, *Cardiff*
Dominique Bonnet, *London*
Neil Davie, *Kent*
David Gilham, *Manchester*
Paul Hamilton, *Belfast*
Simon Langdon, *Edinburgh*
Tarik F Massoud, *Cambridge*
James S Owen, *London*
Dipak P Ramji, *Cardiff*
Cordula M Stover, *leicester*
Olga Tura, *Edinburgh*
Mark Wareing, *Manchester*
Adam Wright, *Liverpool*
Shi-Yu Yang, *London*

United States

Anshu Agrawal, *Irvine*
Mikhail Alexeyev, *Mobile*
Robert J Amato, *Houston*
Alexanian Arshak, *Milwaukee*
Ragheb A Assaly, *Toledo*
Laure Aurelian, *Baltimore*
Joseph M Backer, *Brookfield*
Xue-Feng Bai, *Columbus*
Raymond T Bartus, *San Diego*
Ajay Singh Behl, *Minneapolis*
Fabian Benencia, *Athens*
Arun Bhunia, *West Lafayette*
Ramireddy Bommireddy, *Tucson*
Michael Borchers, *Cincinnati*
Alexander Bukreyev, *Galveston*
Lu Cai, *Louisville*
Carlos Caulin, *Houston*
Arvind Chhabra, *Farmington*
Maurizio Chiriva, *Lubbock*
Yingzi Cong, *Galveston*
Akram Da'darah, *North Grafton*
Guillaume Darrasse-Jèze, *New York*
Murat Digicaylioglu, *San Antonio*
Liu-Tao Du, *Los Angeles*
Nejat Düzgüneş, *San Francisco*
Charles E Egwuagu, *Bethesda*
Lian-Chun Fan, *Indianapolis*
Bing-Liang Fang, *Houston*
Markus H Frank, *Boston*
Pramod kumar Giri, *Athens*
W Scott Goebel, *Indianapolis*
Seshu K Gudlavalleti, *Omaha*
Zong-Sheng Guo, *Pittsburgh*
Diane M Harper, *Leawood*
Kremer Heidemarie, *Miami*
Marta Herreros-Villanueva, *Rochester*
Cory Michel Hogaboam, *Ann Arbor*
Ji-Fan Hu, *Palo Atlo*
Mohamed I Husseiny, *Los Angeles*
Thomas E Ichim, *San Diego*
Miroslaw Janowski, *Baltimore*
Pedro A Jose, *Washington*
Christopher J Kemp, *Washington*
Mahin Khatami, *Philadelphia*
Hyung Lae Kim, *Los Angeles*
Katsuhiro Kita, *Galveston*
Shashidhar H Kori, *Mountain*
Raj Kumar, *Scranton*
Paul C Kuo, *Maywood*

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2014 February 20; 4(1): 1-6

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJEM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 1 February 20, 2014

Contents

World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Volume 4 Number 1 February 20, 2014

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 20, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5493/wjem.v4.i1.1

World J Exp Med 2014 February 20; 4(1): 1-6
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

EDITORIAL

High density lipoproteins and type 2 diabetes: Emerging concepts in their relationship

Michael S Kostapanos, Moses S Elisaf

Michael S Kostapanos, Moses S Elisaf, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, 45110 Ioannina, Greece
Author contributions: Kostapanos MS prepared and wrote the editorial; Elisaf MS did the final editing of the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Moses S Elisaf, MD, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, POB 1186, 45110 Ioannina, Greece. egepi@cc.uoi.gr
Telephone: +30-26510-07509 Fax: +30-26510-07016
Received: October 30, 2013 Revised: November 11, 2013
Accepted: November 15, 2013
Published online: February 20, 2014

Abstract

Patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) frequently exhibit macrovascular complications of atherosclerotic cardiovascular (CV) disease. High density lipoproteins (HDL) are protective against atherosclerosis. Low levels of HDL cholesterol (HDL-C) independently contribute to CV risk. Patients with T2DM not only exhibit low HDL-C, but also dysfunctional HDL. Furthermore, low concentration of HDL may increase the risk for the development of T2DM through a decreased β cell survival and secretory function. In this paper, we discuss emerging concepts in the relationship of T2DM with HDL.

Key words: Type 2 diabetes; High density lipoproteins; Insulin secretion; β cells; Paraoxonase-1

Core tip: Patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) not only exhibit low high density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, but also dysfunctional HDL. Furthermore, low concentration of HDL may increase the risk for the development of T2DM through a decreased β cell survival and secretory function. In this paper, we discuss emerging concepts in the relationship of T2DM with HDL.

Kostapanos MS, Elisaf MS. High density lipoproteins and type 2 diabetes: Emerging concepts in their relationship. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(1): 1-6 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) affects approximately 12 million people in the United States[1]. Atherosclerotic cardiovascular (CV) disease accounts for about 70% of overall mortality in patients with T2DM[2,3]. Various factors, modifiable or not, promote atherosclerosis in these patients[1]. These include metabolic abnormalities, such as hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, albuminuria and atherogenic dyslipidemia [low high density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) together with increased triglycerides (TG) levels, as well as raised cholesterol concentration of the small dense low density lipoprotein (sdLDL) particles][1,4-7].

Atherogenic dyslipidemia is characterized by the imbalance between pro-atherogenic apolipoprotein (apo)B-containing and anti-atherogenic apoA1-containing lipoprotein particles[8]. In this context, sdLDL particles predominate[9-13]. The small size of LDL particles has been recognized as a risk predictor of CV events[10,11,14].

Interestingly, the risk of coronary heart disease (CHD) associated with atherogenic dyslipidemia may exceed the risk from raised low density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) levels of 150-220 mg/dL[1,7]. Furthermore, even statin-treated patients with T2DM within LDL-C goals exhibit residual CV risk, which is partially associated with the presence of atherogenic dyslipidemia[15,16]. A *post hoc* analysis of the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) assessed the CV risk across quintiles of log(TG)/HDL-C in 585 men with T2DM[17]. The risk for CHD or cerebrovascular events was augmented at the highest compared with the lowest quintile (28% *vs* 52%,

respectively, $P = 0.001$)[17].

Except for the predominance of sdLDL particles, low HDL-C levels comprise an independent risk factor of CV events[18,19]. In the Framingham Heart Study, HDL-C was a more potent predictor of CHD than total cholesterol, LDL-C or TG[18]. It was suggested that for every 1 mg/dL decrease in HDL-C levels, the risk for CHD increases by 2% in men and 3% in women[20].

HDL is responsible for the process of reverse cholesterol transport from peripheral tissues, including arterial wall, to the liver[21]. Furthermore, HDL exhibits multiple anti-atherogenic actions[21,22]. These include anti-inflammatory, anti-oxidant and anti-thrombotic effects together with an HDL-associated restoration of endothelial function[21,22]. These actions are mediated at least in part by the enrichment of HDL with apoA1 or enzymes [*e.g.,* paraoxonase-1 (PON1) and HDL-associated lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A_2 (Lp-PLA_2)][21,23,24]. In this paper, we discuss the relationship between T2DM and HDL.

LOW LEVELS OF HDL-C IN T2DM

Patients with T2DM exhibit low HDL-C levels[12]. Among 7692 outpatients with T2DM, the prevalence of low HDL-C levels (< 40 and 50 mg/dL for men and women, respectively) was 49.5%[25]. Several mechanisms have been described to explain this abnormality mostly associated with the predominance of TG-rich lipoproteins[12,23,26]. Briefly, very low density lipoproteins (VLDL) are overproduced in insulin resistant states[12,23,26]. Furthermore, insulin resistance is associated with a defective clearance of TG-rich lipoproteins (*i.e.,* VLDL, chylomicrons and their remnants) *via* lipoprotein lipase (LPL)[23]. These lipoproteins exchange their core lipids with HDL through cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP) resulting in TG-enriched HDL particles[27]. The activity of CETP is enhanced in insulin resistant states (*e.g.,* T2DM)[27]. The enrichment of HDL particles with TG decreases the stability and plasma residence time of these lipoproteins[23,28,29]. Namely, apoA1 is easily removed from circulating TG-rich HDL particles following lipolysis[23,28]. Furthermore, the lipolysis of these lipoproteins by hepatic lipase gives rise to small HDL particles, which are rapidly cleared[23,28]. Also, hypertriglyceridemic states are characterized by reduced availability of the lipolytic surface fragments derived from TG-rich lipoproteins. These components are necessary for the formation of HDL[23,28].

DYSFUNCTIONAL HDL IN T2DM

It was suggested that HDL is dysfunctional in T2DM. Experimental *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies showed that HDL-associated reverse cholesterol transport is impaired in T2DM[30-32]. Several mechanisms were suggested to mediate this abnormality. These include a reduced expression of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters. The members A1 and G1 of this family facilitate the efflux of cellular free cholesterol and phospholipid to assemble with apoA1 and form nascent HDL[33]. The gene expression and protein levels of ABC-A1 were reduced in T2DM in parallel with poor glycemic control[32]. This may increase risk for CHD[34]. Furthermore, insulin decreased the *in vitro* protein expression and activity of ABC-G1[35]. This finding suggests a role of hyperinsulinemia (*e.g.,* in T2DM) in defective HDL-mediated reverse cholesterol transport.

The oxidative modification of HDL (especially of apoA1) by glycated hemoglobin may be another mechanism explaining HDL dysfunctionality in T2DM[30,31]. This could be related to the presence of the haptoglobin Hp2 allele, which increases the oxidative modification of circulating lipoproteins[31]. Experimental data showed that HDL dysfunctionality in T2DM may be ameliorated by the use of antioxidants (*e.g.,* vitamin E) *in vivo*[36]. Furthermore, the anti-oxidant defense of HDL is decreased in T2DM. This could be associated with a reduced PON1 activity mediated by the glycation of this enzyme[37-39]. Of interest, postprandial glycemia and impaired catabolism of TG-rich lipoproteins was associated with decreased PON1 activity in T2DM[40-42]. Several polymorphisms of *PON1* gene favor the defective action of PON1 in T2DM[43]. Reduced PON1 activity was an independent predictor of CV events in patients with T2DM[44].

We have previously shown that patients with metabolic syndrome exhibit decreased activity of HDL-associated Lp-PLA_2 compared with age and sex-matched controls[45,46]. HDL-associated Lp-PLA_2 contributes significantly to the anti-inflammatory and anti-atherogenic potential of HDL[47,48]. Despite low activity of this enzyme in pre-diabetic insulin resistant states, data are insufficient for patients with T2DM.

PROTECTIVE ROLE OF HDL IN THE PATHOGENESIS OF T2DM

The gradual deterioration of pancreatic β cell function following persistent insulin resistance is the main pathophysiological event in T2DM[49,50]. At the time of T2DM diagnosis, the secretory function of β cells is declined by approximately 50% of normal[51]. It was suggested that lipoproteins may regulate glucose homeostasis by affecting both peripheral insulin resistance and pancreatic islet secretion[52]. For example, high circulating levels of free fatty acids impair insulin sensitivity[53-55]. The emerging concept is that atherogenic dyslipidemia may precede T2DM and favor its development by promoting the dysfunction and apoptosis of β cells[56]. In the UKPDS, the log(TG)/HDL-C ratio, as a surrogate of atherogenic dyslipidemia, was associated with decreased insulin sensitivity and impaired β cell function in 585 male patients with T2DM[17].

Low HDL-C levels independently predict the development of T2DM[57]. A recent observational study investigated the association of HDL-C and β cell function in 1087 subjects at risk of T2DM[58]. Low HDL-C levels

were independently associated with indices of β cell dysfunction in patients with impaired either fasting glucose or glucose tolerance[58].

Pancreatic β cells express receptors that participate in the binding and processing of plasma lipoproteins[53,59]. These include the LDL-receptor and the LDL-receptor related protein[60]. Both circulating and endogenous cholesterol of β cells can affect insulin secretion[60]. In this context, VLDL and LDL particles reduce insulin mRNA expression and proliferation, while inducing apoptosis of β cells[53]. Furthermore, cholesterol accumulation in pancreatic β cells may impair their secretory function[52,60,61]. In contrast, HDL exerts a protective role by improving β cell secretory function and antagonizing the apoptosis of these cells[53]. The lipid-free apoA1 and apoA2 or HDL increased insulin secretion by up to 5-fold *in vitro*[62]. Furthermore, the administration of reconstituted HDL in patients with T2DM improved the glycemic control by increasing β cell insulin secretory function[63].

The process of reverse cholesterol transport can help explain these benefits. Several experimental studies highlighted the protective role of ABC-A1 against T2DM[60]. In contrast, ABC-A1 knockout mice exhibited impaired glucose tolerance due to a decreased insulin secretion upon glucose stimulation[64]. This effect was not accompanied by any changes in insulin mRNA expression, suggesting that cholesterol accumulation in β cells interferes with insulin exocytosis[52,64]. Furthermore, human carriers of loss-of-function ABC-A1 mutations exhibited reduced not only HDL-C levels, but also insulin secretion[63,65]. On the other hand, rosiglitazone improved glucose tolerance by upregulating the expression of ABC-A1 gene[64].

Several *in vitro* studies suggested a beneficial role of HDL on the survival of β cells[53,56,66]. This benefit may be mediated by the anti-oxidant effects of HDL. For example, oxidized LDL (oxLDL) decreased insulin secretion at the transcriptional level and promoted apoptosis of β cells *in vitro*[66]. This was associated with an activation of the Jun N-terminal kinase pathway[66,67]. HDL reversed these actions of oxLDL[66]. To this extent, experimental studies showed that PON1 increases insulin secretion, thereby reducing the incidence of T2DM *in vivo*[68,69]. PON1 was also associated with increased survival of β cells[69]. Furthermore, not only PON1 but also HDL-associated Lp-PLA$_2$ inhibits the oxidation of LDL[70]. Lp-PLA$_2$ is produced in the arterial wall by macrophages[70]. It is associated with lipoproteins, primarily LDL and secondarily HDL, and degrades bioactive phospholipids[70]. Both PON1 and HDL-associated Lp-PLA$_2$ protected hypercholesterolemic mice from atherosclerosis[71,72]. OxLDL inhibit these enzymes[72]. Therefore, oxLDL and HDL are considered antagonists in the development of atherosclerotic vascular disease[72].

CONCLUSION

Interest is increasing on the protective role of HDL against atherosclerotic CV disease. CV risk is high even in patients with T2DM who exhibit LDL-C levels within normal range. Low HDL-C is an independent contributor of this residual risk. The increased concentration of circulating TG-rich lipoproteins mostly accounts for low HDL-C levels in patients with T2DM. Considerable evidence suggests that HDL is dysfunctional in T2DM. Indeed, decreased ABC-A1 and/or -G1 expression reduces biosynthesis of HDL in T2DM through reduced availability of cholesterol for loading to apoA1. This results in impaired reverse cholesterol transport. Furthermore, the oxidative modification of HDL (especially of apoA1) in T2DM impairs its functionality. This is in part associated with a reduced anti-oxidant defense of these lipoproteins *via* PON1. The emerging concept is that low HDL-C may be involved in the pathogenesis of T2DM. The abundance of circulating atherogenic particles together with the increased intracellular cholesterol concentration in β cells have been associated with impaired secretory function of pancreatic islets. HDL by removing cholesterol from these cells may increase insulin secretion. Furthermore, these lipoproteins increase the survival of β cells by mechanisms which are under investigation. The anti-oxidant actions of HDL *via* PON1 may play a key role in this benefit.

REFERENCES

1 **Garber AJ**. Attenuating cardiovascular risk factors in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Am Fam Physician* 2000; **62**: 2633-2642, 2633-2642 [PMID: 11142470]

2 **Leal J**, Gray AM, Clarke PM. Development of life-expectancy tables for people with type 2 diabetes. *Eur Heart J* 2009; **30**: 834-839 [PMID: 19109355 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehn567]

3 **Grundy SM**, Benjamin IJ, Burke GL, Chait A, Eckel RH, Howard BV, Mitch W, Smith SC, Sowers JR. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease: a statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 1999; **100**: 1134-1146 [PMID: 10477542 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.100.10.1134]

4 **Wanner C**, Krane V. Recent advances in the treatment of atherogenic dyslipidemia in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Kidney Blood Press Res* 2011; **34**: 209-217 [PMID: 21691123 DOI: 10.1159/000326849]

5 **Austin MA**, King MC, Vranizan KM, Krauss RM. Atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype. A proposed genetic marker for coronary heart disease risk. *Circulation* 1990; **82**: 495-506 [PMID: 2372896 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.82.2.495]

6 **Musunuru K**. Atherogenic dyslipidemia: cardiovascular risk and dietary intervention. *Lipids* 2010; **45**: 907-914 [PMID: 20524075 DOI: 10.1007/s11745-010-3408-1]

7 **Grundy SM**. Small LDL, atherogenic dyslipidemia, and the metabolic syndrome. *Circulation* 1997; **95**: 1-4 [PMID: 8994405 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.95.1.1]

8 **Walldius G**, Jungner I, Aastveit AH, Holme I, Furberg CD, Sniderman AD. The apoB/apoA-I ratio is better than the cholesterol ratios to estimate the balance between plasma proatherogenic and antiatherogenic lipoproteins and to predict coronary risk. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2004; **42**: 1355-1363 [PMID: 15576296 DOI: 10.1515/CCLM.2004.254]

9 **Austin MA**. Triglyceride, small, dense low-density lipoprotein, and the atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype. *Curr Atheroscler Rep* 2000; **2**: 200-207 [PMID: 11122745]

10 **Mikhailidis DP**, Elisaf M, Rizzo M, Berneis K, Griffin B, Zambon A, Athyros V, de Graaf J, März W, Parhofer KG, Rini GB, Spinas GA, Tomkin GH, Tselepis AD, Wierzbicki AS, Winkler K, Florentin M, Liberopoulos E. "European panel on low density lipoprotein (LDL) subclasses": a state-

ment on the pathophysiology, atherogenicity and clinical significance of LDL subclasses. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2011; **9**: 533-571 [PMID: 21595628]
11 **Mikhailidis DP**, Elisaf M, Rizzo M, Berneis K, Griffin B, Zambon A, Athyros V, de Graaf J, März W, Parhofer KG, Rini GB, Spinas GA, Tomkin GH, Tselepis AD, Wierzbicki AS, Winkler K, Florentin M, Liberopoulos E. "European panel on low density lipoprotein (LDL) subclasses": a statement on the pathophysiology, atherogenicity and clinical significance of LDL subclasses: executive summary. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2011; **9**: 531-532 [PMID: 21595629]
12 **Kreisberg RA**. Diabetic dyslipidemia. *Am J Cardiol* 1998; **82**: 67U-73U; discussion 85U-86U [PMID: 9915665]
13 **Hepp P**, Osterhoff G, Engel T, Marquass B, Klink T, Josten C. Biomechanical evaluation of knotless anatomical double-layer double-row rotator cuff repair: a comparative ex vivo study. *Am J Sports Med* 2009; **37**: 1363-1369 [PMID: 19307331 DOI: 10.1242/dmm.001180]
14 **St-Pierre AC**, Cantin B, Dagenais GR, Mauriège P, Bernard PM, Després JP, Lamarche B. Low-density lipoprotein subfractions and the long-term risk of ischemic heart disease in men: 13-year follow-up data from the Québec Cardiovascular Study. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2005; **25**: 553-559 [PMID: 15618542 DOI: 10.1161/01.ATV.0000154144.73236.f4]
15 **Chapman MJ**, Ginsberg HN, Amarenco P, Andreotti F, Borén J, Catapano AL, Descamps OS, Fisher E, Kovanen PT, Kuivenhoven JA, Lesnik P, Masana L, Nordestgaard BG, Ray KK, Reiner Z, Taskinen MR, Tokgözoglu L, Tybjærg-Hansen A, Watts GF. Triglyceride-rich lipoproteins and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol in patients at high risk of cardiovascular disease: evidence and guidance for management. *Eur Heart J* 2011; **32**: 1345-1361 [PMID: 21531743 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehr112]
16 **Kostapanos MS**, Katsiki N, Elisaf MS, Mikhailidis DP. Editorial: reducing cardiovascular risk: is low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol (LDL-C) lowering enough? *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2012; **10**: 173-177 [PMID: 22250844]
17 **Hermans MP**, Ahn SA, Rousseau MF. log(TG)/HDL-C is related to both residual cardiometabolic risk and β-cell function loss in type 2 diabetes males. *Cardiovasc Diabetol* 2010; **9**: 88 [PMID: 21156040 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2840-9-88]
18 **Link JJ**, Rohatgi A, de Lemos JA. HDL cholesterol: physiology, pathophysiology, and management. *Curr Probl Cardiol* 2007; **32**: 268-314 [PMID: 17481993]
19 **Cziraky MJ**, Watson KE, Talbert RL. Targeting low HDL-cholesterol to decrease residual cardiovascular risk in the managed care setting. *J Manag Care Pharm* 2008; **14**: S3-S28; quiz S30-S31 [PMID: 19891279]
20 **Chapman MJ**, Assmann G, Fruchart JC, Shepherd J, Sirtori C. Raising high-density lipoprotein cholesterol with reduction of cardiovascular risk: the role of nicotinic acid--a position paper developed by the European Consensus Panel on HDL-C. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2004; **20**: 1253-1268 [PMID: 15324528]
21 **Florentin M**, Liberopoulos EN, Wierzbicki AS, Mikhailidis DP. Multiple actions of high-density lipoprotein. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2008; **23**: 370-378 [PMID: 18520722 DOI: 10.1097/HCO.0b013e3283043806]
22 **Besler C**, Heinrich K, Riwanto M, Lüscher TF, Landmesser U. High-density lipoprotein-mediated anti-atherosclerotic and endothelial-protective effects: a potential novel therapeutic target in cardiovascular disease. *Curr Pharm Des* 2010; **16**: 1480-1493 [PMID: 20196740]
23 **Kontush A**, Chapman MJ. Antiatherogenic small, dense HDL--guardian angel of the arterial wall? *Nat Clin Pract Cardiovasc Med* 2006; **3**: 144-153 [PMID: 16505860 DOI: 10.1038/ncpcardio0500]
24 **Kostapanos MS**, Milionis HJ, Filippatos TD, Christogiannis LG, Bairaktari ET, Tselepis AD, Elisaf MS. Dose-dependent effect of rosuvastatin treatment on HDL-subfraction phenotype in patients with primary hyperlipidemia. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **14**: 5-13 [PMID: 19246334 DOI: 10.1177/1074248408331031]
25 **Grant RW**, Meigs JB. Prevalence and treatment of low HDL cholesterol among primary care patients with type 2 diabetes: an unmet challenge for cardiovascular risk reduction. *Diabetes Care* 2007; **30**: 479-484 [PMID: 17327308 DOI: 10.2337/dc06-1961]
26 **Ginsberg HN**. Diabetic dyslipidemia: basic mechanisms underlying the common hypertriglyceridemia and low HDL cholesterol levels. *Diabetes* 1996; **45** Suppl 3: S27-S30 [PMID: 8674885]
27 **Kolovou GD**, Anagnostopoulou KK, Kostakou PM, Mikhailidis DP. Cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP), postprandial lipemia and hypolipidemic drugs. *Curr Med Chem* 2009; **16**: 4345-4360 [PMID: 19835569]
28 **Lamarche B**, Rashid S, Lewis GF. HDL metabolism in hypertriglyceridemic states: an overview. *Clin Chim Acta* 1999; **286**: 145-161 [PMID: 10511289]
29 **Sparks DL**, Davidson WS, Lund-Katz S, Phillips MC. Effects of the neutral lipid content of high density lipoprotein on apolipoprotein A-I structure and particle stability. *J Biol Chem* 1995; **270**: 26910-26917 [PMID: 7592936 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.270.45.26910]
30 **Asleh R**, Levy AP. Divergent effects of alpha-tocopherol and vitamin C on the generation of dysfunctional HDL associated with diabetes and the Hp 2-2 genotype. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2010; **12**: 209-217 [PMID: 19769483 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2009.2829]
31 **Asleh R**, Miller-Lotan R, Aviram M, Hayek T, Yulish M, Levy JE, Miller B, Blum S, Milman U, Shapira C, Levy AP. Haptoglobin genotype is a regulator of reverse cholesterol transport in diabetes in vitro and in vivo. *Circ Res* 2006; **99**: 1419-1425 [PMID: 17082477 DOI: 10.1161/01.RES.0000251741.65179.56]
32 **Patel DC**, Albrecht C, Pavitt D, Paul V, Pourreyron C, Newman SP, Godsland IF, Valabhji J, Johnston DG. Type 2 diabetes is associated with reduced ATP-binding cassette transporter A1 gene expression, protein and function. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e22142 [PMID: 21829447 DOI: 10.2459/JCM.0b013e3283522422]
33 **Oram JF**, Vaughan AM. ATP-Binding cassette cholesterol transporters and cardiovascular disease. *Circ Res* 2006; **99**: 1031-1043 [PMID: 17095732 DOI: 10.1161/01.RES.0000250171.54048.5c]
34 **Frikke-Schmidt R**, Nordestgaard BG, Schnohr P, Steffensen R, Tybjaerg-Hansen A. Mutation in ABCA1 predicted risk of ischemic heart disease in the Copenhagen City Heart Study Population. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005; **46**: 1516-1520 [PMID: 16226177 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2005.06.066]
35 **Yamashita M**, Tamasawa N, Matsuki K, Tanabe J, Murakami H, Matsui J, Suda T. Insulin suppresses HDL-mediated cholesterol efflux from macrophages through inhibition of neutral cholesteryl ester hydrolase and ATP-binding cassette transporter G1 expressions. *J Atheroscler Thromb* 2010; **17**: 1183-1189 [PMID: 20733269 DOI: 10.5551/jat.4721]
36 **Asleh R**, Blum S, Kalet-Litman S, Alshiek J, Miller-Lotan R, Asaf R, Rock W, Aviram M, Milman U, Shapira C, Abassi Z, Levy AP. Correction of HDL dysfunction in individuals with diabetes and the haptoglobin 2-2 genotype. *Diabetes* 2008; **57**: 2794-2800 [PMID: 18599520 DOI: 10.2337/db08-0450]
37 **Stefanović A**, Kotur-Stevuljević J, Spasić S, Vekić J, Zeljković A, Spasojević-Kalimanovska V, Jelić-Ivanović Z. HDL 2 particles are associated with hyperglycaemia, lower PON1 activity and oxidative stress in type 2 diabetes mellitus patients. *Clin Biochem* 2010; **43**: 1230-1235 [PMID: 20709049 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2010.08.005]
38 **Mastorikou M**, Mackness B, Liu Y, Mackness M. Glycation of paraoxonase-1 inhibits its activity and impairs the ability of high-density lipoprotein to metabolize membrane lipid hydroperoxides. *Diabet Med* 2008; **25**: 1049-1055 [PMID: 18937674 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2008.02546.x]
39 **Nobécourt E**, Jacqueminet S, Hansel B, Chantepie S, Grimal-

di A, Chapman MJ, Kontush A. Defective antioxidative activity of small dense HDL3 particles in type 2 diabetes: relationship to elevated oxidative stress and hyperglycaemia. *Diabetologia* 2005; **48**: 529-538 [PMID: 15729582 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-004-1655-5]

40 **Duncan MD**, Tihan T, Donovan DM, Phung QH, Rowley DL, Harmon JW, Gearhart PJ, Duncan KL. Esophagogastric adenocarcinoma in an E1A/E1B transgenic model involves p53 disruption. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2000; **4**: 290-297 [PMID: 10769092 DOI: 10.1016/S1091-255X(00)80078-5]

41 **Serin O**, Konukoglu D, Firtina S, Mavis O. Serum oxidized low density lipoprotein, paraoxonase 1 and lipid peroxidation levels during oral glucose tolerance test. *Horm Metab Res* 2007; **39**: 207-211 [PMID: 17373636 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-970419]

42 **Kalmár T**, Seres I, Balogh Z, Káplár M, Winkler G, Paragh G. Correlation between the activities of lipoprotein lipase and paraoxonase in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Metab* 2005; **31**: 574-580 [PMID: 16357806 DOI: 10.1016/S1262-3636(07)70233-1]

43 **Flekac M**, Skrha J, Zídková K, Lacinová Z, Hilgertová J. Paraoxonase 1 gene polymorphisms and enzyme activities in diabetes mellitus. *Physiol Res* 2008; **57**: 717-726 [PMID: 17949258]

44 **Ikeda Y**, Inoue M, Suehiro T, Arii K, Kumon Y, Hashimoto K. Low human paraoxonase predicts cardiovascular events in Japanese patients with type 2 diabetes. *Acta Diabetol* 2009; **46**: 239-242 [PMID: 18830558 DOI: 10.1007/s00592-008-0066-3]

45 **Rizos E**, Tambaki AP, Gazi I, Tselepis AD, Elisaf M. Lipoprotein-associated PAF-acetylhydrolase activity in subjects with the metabolic syndrome. *Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids* 2005; **72**: 203-209 [PMID: 15664305 DOI: 10.1016/j.plefa.2004.10.021]

46 **Lagos KG**, Filippatos TD, Tsimihodimos V, Gazi IF, Rizos C, Tselepis AD, Mikhailidis DP, Elisaf MS. Alterations in the high density lipoprotein phenotype and HDL-associated enzymes in subjects with metabolic syndrome. *Lipids* 2009; **44**: 9-16 [PMID: 18956219 DOI: 10.1007/s11745-008-3251-9]

47 **Tellis CC**, Tselepis AD. The role of lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A2 in atherosclerosis may depend on its lipoprotein carrier in plasma. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2009; **1791**: 327-338 [PMID: 19272461 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbalip.2009.02.015]

48 **Saougos VG**, Tambaki AP, Kalogirou M, Kostapanos M, Gazi IF, Wolfert RL, Elisaf M, Tselepis AD. Differential effect of hypolipidemic drugs on lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A2. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2007; **27**: 2236-2243 [PMID: 17656665 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.107.147280]

49 **Unger J**, Parkin CG. Type 2 diabetes: an expanded view of pathophysiology and therapy. *Postgrad Med* 2010; **122**: 145-157 [PMID: 20463424 DOI: 10.3810/pgm.2010.05.2152]

50 **Scheen AJ**. Pathophysiology of type 2 diabetes. *Acta Clin Belg* 2003; **58**: 335-341 [PMID: 15068125]

51 U.K. prospective diabetes study 16. Overview of 6 years' therapy of type II diabetes: a progressive disease. U.K. Prospective Diabetes Study Group. *Diabetes* 1995; **44**: 1249-1258 [PMID: 7589820]

52 **Getz GS**, Reardon CA. High-density lipoprotein function in regulating insulin secretion: possible relevance to metabolic syndrome. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2010; **30**: 1497-1499 [PMID: 20631346 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.110.210583]

53 **Roehrich ME**, Mooser V, Lenain V, Herz J, Nimpf J, Azhar S, Bideau M, Capponi A, Nicod P, Haefliger JA, Waeber G. Insulin-secreting beta-cell dysfunction induced by human lipoproteins. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 18368-18375 [PMID: 12594227 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M300102200]

54 **Griffin ME**, Marcucci MJ, Cline GW, Bell K, Barucci N, Lee D, Goodyear LJ, Kraegen EW, White MF, Shulman GI. Free fatty acid-induced insulin resistance is associated with activation of protein kinase C theta and alterations in the insulin signaling cascade. *Diabetes* 1999; **48**: 1270-1274 [PMID: 10342815 DOI: 10.2337/diabetes.48.6.1270]

55 **Kraegen EW**, Cooney GJ. Free fatty acids and skeletal muscle insulin resistance. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2008; **19**: 235-241 [PMID: 18460913 DOI: 10.1097/01.mol.0000319118.44995.9a]

56 **Rütti S**, Ehses JA, Sibler RA, Prazak R, Rohrer L, Georgopoulos S, Meier DT, Niclauss N, Berney T, Donath MY, von Eckardstein A. Low- and high-density lipoproteins modulate function, apoptosis, and proliferation of primary human and murine pancreatic beta-cells. *Endocrinology* 2009; **150**: 4521-4530 [PMID: 19628574 DOI: 10.1210/en.2009-0252]

57 **von Eckardstein A**, Schulte H, Assmann G. Risk for diabetes mellitus in middle-aged Caucasian male participants of the PROCAM study: implications for the definition of impaired fasting glucose by the American Diabetes Association. Prospective Cardiovascular Münster. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2000; **85**: 3101-3108 [PMID: 10999793 DOI: 10.1210/jc.85.9.3101]

58 **Bardini G**, Dicembrini I, Rotella CM, Giannini S. Correlation between HDL cholesterol levels and beta-cell function in subjects with various degree of glucose tolerance. *Acta Diabetol* 2013; **50**: 277-281 [PMID: 21997326 DOI: 10.1007/s00592-011-0339-0]

59 **Cnop M**, Grupping A, Hoorens A, Bouwens L, Pipeleers-Marichal M, Pipeleers D. Endocytosis of low-density lipoprotein by human pancreatic beta cells and uptake in lipid-storing vesicles, which increase with age. *Am J Pathol* 2000; **156**: 237-244 [PMID: 10623672 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)64724-4]

60 **Brunham LR**, Kruit JK, Verchere CB, Hayden MR. Cholesterol in islet dysfunction and type 2 diabetes. *J Clin Invest* 2008; **118**: 403-408 [PMID: 18246189 DOI: 10.1172/JCI33296]

61 **Fryirs M**, Barter PJ, Rye KA. Cholesterol metabolism and pancreatic beta-cell function. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2009; **20**: 159-164 [PMID: 19417651 DOI: 10.1097/MOL.0b013e32832ac180]

62 **Fryirs MA**, Barter PJ, Appavoo M, Tuch BE, Tabet F, Heather AK, Rye KA. Effects of high-density lipoproteins on pancreatic beta-cell insulin secretion. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2010; **30**: 1642-1648 [PMID: 20466975 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.110.207373]

63 **Kruit JK**, Brunham LR, Verchere CB, Hayden MR. HDL and LDL cholesterol significantly influence beta-cell function in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2010; **21**: 178-185 [PMID: 20463468 DOI: 10.1097/MOL.0b013e328339387b]

64 **Brunham LR**, Kruit JK, Pape TD, Timmins JM, Reuwer AQ, Vasanji Z, Marsh BJ, Rodrigues B, Johnson JD, Parks JS, Verchere CB, Hayden MR. Beta-cell ABCA1 influences insulin secretion, glucose homeostasis and response to thiazolidinedione treatment. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 340-347 [PMID: 17322896 DOI: 10.1038/nm1546]

65 **Vergeer M**, Brunham LR, Koetsveld J, Kruit JK, Verchere CB, Kastelein JJ, Hayden MR, Stroes ES. Carriers of loss-of-function mutations in ABCA1 display pancreatic beta-cell dysfunction. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 869-874 [PMID: 20067955 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-1562]

66 **Abderrahmani A**, Niederhauser G, Favre D, Abdelli S, Ferdaoussi M, Yang JY, Regazzi R, Widmann C, Waeber G. Human high-density lipoprotein particles prevent activation of the JNK pathway induced by human oxidised low-density lipoprotein particles in pancreatic beta cells. *Diabetologia* 2007; **50**: 1304-1314 [PMID: 17437081 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-007-0642-z]

67 **Nofer JR**, Levkau B, Wolinska I, Junker R, Fobker M, von Eckardstein A, Seedorf U, Assmann G. Suppression of endothelial cell apoptosis by high density lipoproteins (HDL) and HDL-associated lysosphingolipids. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 34480-34485 [PMID: 11432865 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M103782200]

68 **Rozenberg O**, Shiner M, Aviram M, Hayek T. Paraoxonase 1 (PON1) attenuates diabetes development in mice through its antioxidative properties. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2008; **44**: 1951-1959 [PMID: 18358245 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2008.02.012]

69 **Koren-Gluzer M**, Aviram M, Meilin E, Hayek T. The anti-

oxidant HDL-associated paraoxonase-1 (PON1) attenuates diabetes development and stimulates β-cell insulin release. *Atherosclerosis* 2011; **219**: 510-518 [PMID: 21862013]

70 **Dada N**, Kim NW, Wolfert RL. Lp-PLA2: an emerging biomarker of coronary heart disease. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2002; **2**: 17-22 [PMID: 11963798 DOI: 10.1586/4737159.2.1.17]

71 **Zhang C**, Peng W, Wang M, Zhu J, Zang Y, Shi W, Zhang J, Qin J. Studies on protective effects of human paraoxonases 1 and 3 on atherosclerosis in apolipoprotein E knockout mice. *Gene Ther* 2010; **17**: 626-633 [PMID: 20182519 DOI: 10.1038/gt.2010.11]

72 **Mertens A**, Holvoet P. Oxidized LDL and HDL: antagonists in atherothrombosis. *FASEB J* 2001; **15**: 2073-2084 [PMID: 11641234 DOI: 10.1096/fj.01-0273rev]

P- Reviewer: Kim DH **S- Editor**: Zhai HH
L- Editor: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Exp Med 2014 February 20; 4(1): I-V
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aim and scope

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

WJEM is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15 471 editorial borad members or peer reivewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJEM* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers; (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, *etc.*; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in experimental medicine; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in experimental medicine; (13) Meta-Analysis: To evaluate the clinical effectiveness in experimental medicine by using data from two or more randomised control trials; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJEM*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of experimental medicine; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

Launch date

December 20, 2011

Frequency

Quarterly

Editorial office
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-59080039
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Publisher
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Telephone: +852-58042046
Fax: +852-31158812
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Production center
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893

Representative office
USA Office
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

Instructions to authors
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

Indexed and Abstracted in
Digital Object Identifier.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc.* The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJEM* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should

follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www.clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100722180909.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjem@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, *e.g.*, Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, *e.g.*, Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/…"), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, *e.g.*, 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement,

but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, *e.g.*, PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and position-

ing tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data
Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression
Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units
Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073806.htm.

Abbreviations
Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics
Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing
All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation
The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form
Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073726.htm.

Responses to reviewers
Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/g_info_20100725073445.htm.

Proof of financial support
For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

STATEMENT ABOUT ANONYMOUS PUBLICATION OF THE PEER REVIEWERS' COMMENTS

In order to increase the quality of peer review, push authors to carefully revise their manuscripts based on the peer reviewers' comments, and promote academic interactions among peer reviewers, authors and readers, we decide to anonymously publish the reviewers' comments and author's responses at the same time the manuscript is published online.

PUBLICATION FEE

WJEM is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2014 May 20; 4(2): 7-26

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJEM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 2 May 20, 2014

MINIREVIEWS

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Experimental Medicine*, Pedro Xavier-Elsas, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Immunology, Instituto de Microbiologia Prof. Paulo de Góes, Universidade Federal do Rio de Janeiro - Centro de Ciências da Saúde, Bloco I, Room I-2-066, Cidade Universitária, Rio de Janeiro, CEP 21941-590, Brazil

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx

PUBLICATION DATE
May 20, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i2.7

World J Exp Med 2014 May 20; 4(2): 7-15
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Animal models of *ex vivo* lung perfusion as a platform for transplantation research

Kevin Nelson, Christopher Bobba, Samir Ghadiali, Don Hayes Jr, Sylvester M Black, Bryan A Whitson

Kevin Nelson, Christopher Bobba, Samir Ghadiali, Department Biomedical Engineering, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH 43210, United States
Don Hayes Jr, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Pulmonary, Allergy, and Critical Care and Sleep Medicine, The Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, The Ohio State University Department of Pediatrics, Nationwide Children's Hospital, Columbus, OH 43210, United States
Sylvester M Black, Department of Surgery, Division of Transplantation, Columbus, OH 43210, United States
Bryan A Whitson, Department of Surgery, Division of Cardiac Surgery, The Collaboration for Organ Perfusion, Protection, Engineering and Regeneration Laboratory, The Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, Columbus, OH 43210, United States
Author contributions: Black SM and Whitson BA created the figures; Whitson BA was responsible for revisions with authors input and approval; Nelson K and Bobba C contributed equally to first authorship; Nelson K and Bobba C were primary authors; all authors equally involved in editing.
Correspondence to: Bryan A Whitson, MD, PhD, Department of Surgery Division of Cardiac Surgery, The Collaboration for Organ Perfusion, Protection, Engineering and Regeneration Laboratory, The Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, N-813 Doan Hall, 410 W. 10th Ave., Columbus, OH 43210, United States. bryan.whitson@osumc.edu
Telephone: +1-614-3667414 Fax: +1-614-2932020
Received: November 29, 2013 Revised: January 23, 2014
Accepted: March 13, 2014
Published online: May 20, 2014

Abstract

Ex vivo lung perfusion (EVLP) is a powerful experimental model for isolated lung research. EVLP allows for the lungs to be manipulated and characterized in an external environment so that the effect of specific ventilation/perfusion variables can be studied independent of other confounding physiologic contributions. At the same time, EVLP allows for normal organ level function and real-time monitoring of pulmonary physiology and mechanics. As a result, this technique provides unique advantages over *in vivo* and *in vitro* models. Small and large animal models of EVLP have been developed and each of these models has their strengths and weaknesses. In this manuscript, we provide insight into the relative strengths of each model and describe how the development of advanced EVLP protocols is leading to a novel experimental platform that can be used to answer critical questions in pulmonary physiology and transplant medicine.

Key words: *Ex vivo* lung perfusion; Transplantation; Rat; Porcine; Small animal; Large animal; Model; *Ex vivo* lung perfusion

Core tip: *Ex vivo* lung perfusion allows for lungs to be assessed for their physiologic and functional parameters prior to transplant. As a tool for experimental research, the technology is an extremely powerful tool that enables isolated organ modification and evaluation. Utilizing small and large animal models have complementary approaches to addressing transplant related questions.

Nelson K, Bobba C, Ghadiali S, Hayes Jr D, Black SM, Whitson BA. Animal models of *ex vivo* lung perfusion as a platform for transplantation research. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(2): 7-15 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i2/7.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i2.7

INTRODUCTION

Overview of lung transplantation donor organ shortage

Lung transplants have become a viable option for patients with end stage lung disease. Unfortunately, only about 15% of donor lungs are deemed appropriate for transplant[1], and estimates show that about 50% of patients die while waiting for a lung transplant[2]. Addition-

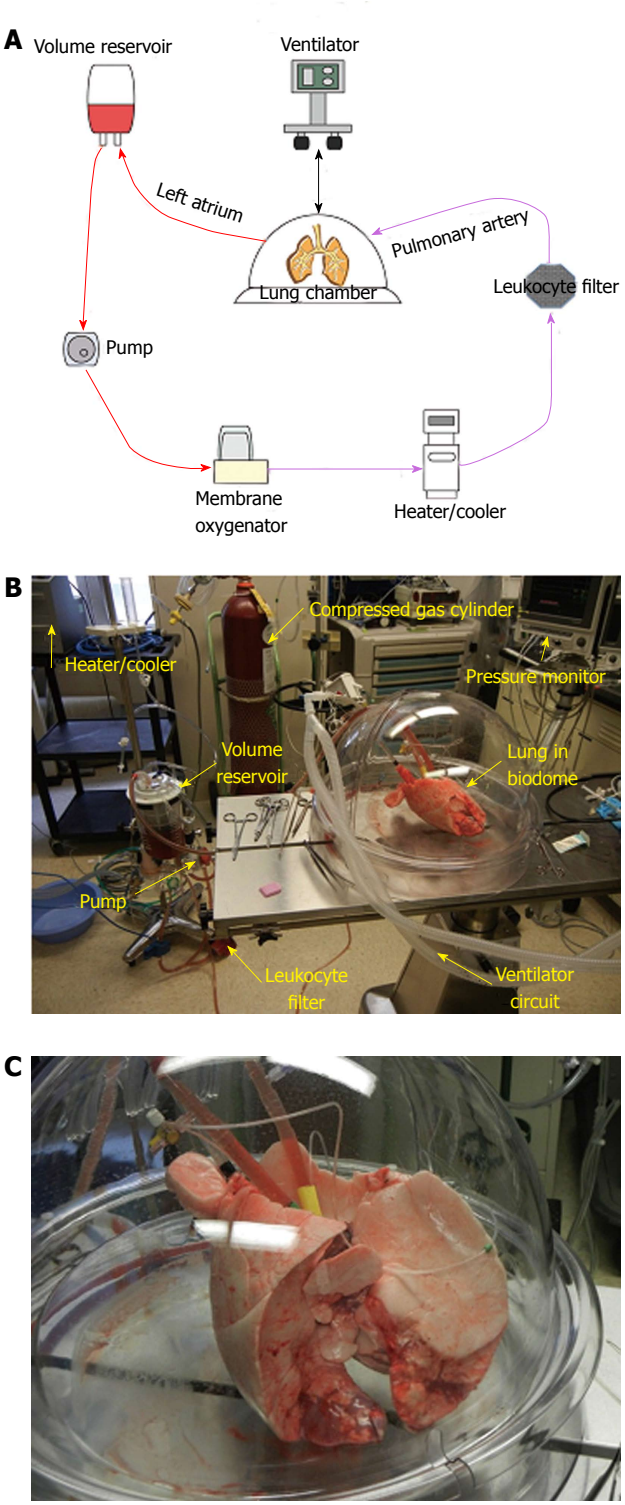


Figure 1 This diagram depicts a schematic of a large animal (porcine) *ex vivo* lung perfusion circuit (A), the portable stand for the perfusion pump (B), A close up picture of a porcine lung on an *ex vivo* lung perfusion circuit (C). The ventilator is used to expand the lungs with lung protective ventilation strategies. The volume reservoir contains the perfusates (either sanguineous or acelluar). Centrifugal pumps have the advantage of being able to have the afterload varied and have the circuit clamped easily, which is a challenge with roller pumps. The heater/cooler allows for exact temperature titration. The reservoir, centrifugal pump, membrane oxygenator, and leukocyte filter are all contained on this apparatus. The biodome which houses the large animal lung is visualized with the ventilator circuit attached to the endotracheal tube which directly cannulates the trachea. The inflow and outflow cannulas are at the superior aspect of the lung and the endotracheal tube on image top left.

ally, the average patient who receives a lung transplant waits 412 d for a suitable lung[3]. Because so many lungs do not meet transplantation requirements, the quality of available lungs must be increased in order to increase the amount of lungs available for transplant.

Ex vivo lung perfusion

Ex vivo lung perfusion (EVLP) (Figure 1) has the potential to increase the lung donor pool and allows for precise control of important variables including perfusate composition, temperature, tidal volume, positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP), fraction of inspired oxygen, and arterial pressure. EVLP can improve donor lungs that were originally thought to be in too poor a condition to be transplanted and can also be used to determine a lung's condition for donation[4,5]. EVLP also allows for the assessment of donor lungs without having to transplant them to another person.

Current clinical state of EVLP

Steen *et al*[4] first published their paper on the transplant of a lung that was perfused *ex vivo* in 2007. In 2011, Both Cypel *et al*[6] and Lindstedt *et al*[7] reported that initially rejected lungs that were perfused *ex vivo* performed similarly to lungs that were initially selected for transplant. In 2012, both Aigner *et al*[8] and Zych *et al*[9] reported that EVLP has the potential to improve the quality of donor lungs that otherwise would not be selected for transplant. In 2013, Wallinder *et al*[10] reported the EVLP is a safe method and allows lungs that would have been rejected to be used in transplants. The potential impact of EVLP to expand the available organ donor pool is profound. If the lung donor conversion rate is able to be increased from 17% to 30%, that small incremental increase in donor conversion would ostensibly double the number of transplants able to be performed worldwide annually. Evaluating the mechanisms of lung injury and progression would enable targeted therapies to intervene on these critical set points. EVLP provides an isolated platform where these mechanical traumas can be isolated and evaluated in a mechanistic fashion. Through a combination of lung protective ventilation, reducing airway edema, and targeted therapies we would anticipate that the increase conversion rate would be able to be met.

EVLP AS AN EXPERIMENTAL PLATFORM

Evaluation of organ function

While performing EVLP, multiple factors can be assessed in real-time to determine the viability of the lung. These include pulmonary arterial flow, pulmonary arterial pressure and pulmonary resistance, as well as dissolved oxygen concentration in the perfusate before and after passing through the pulmonary circulation. This change in dissolved oxygen corresponds to the oxygen production by the lung. The wet-to-dry ratio of a lung can also be assessed, giving an accurate depiction of how edematous the lung has become.

Table 1 Dependent and independent variables with *ex vivo* lung perfusion

Dependent variables (*i.e.*, what can be measured with *ex vivo* lung perfusion)	Independent variables (*i.e.*, what can be varied in an *ex vivo* lung perfusion)
Tracheal pressure	Tracheal pressure
End expiratory pressure	End expiratory pressure
End inspiratory pressure	End inspiratory pressure
Tidal volume	Tidal volume
Compliance	Respiratory rate
Respiratory rate	Pulmonary artery flow rate
Pulmonary artery flow rate	Pulmonary artery pressure
Pulmonary artery pressure	Left atrial outflow pressure
Left atrial outflow pressure	Perfusate
Pulmonary vascular resistance	Ischemic time
Lung weight	Temperature of perfusate
Wet to dry ratio	Temperature of organ
Pre-organ pO_2	Inspired gas concentration and components
Post-organ pO_2	
Oxygen production	
Perfusate pH	
Perfusate pCO_2	
Perfusate for molecular analysis	
Tissue for mRNA, protein, or histologic analysis	

Model of acute lung injury development

EVLP can also be used as a model of acute lung injury (ALI) development and ventilation induced lung injury (VILI). Currently, there has been only one clinical trial that has resulted in a significant decrease in patient mortality related to ALI and VILI[11]. Although multiple ventilation protocols have been researched, there is little information on how drug treatment might affect lung viability at various tidal volumes and positive-end expiratory pressures. Multiple models of ALI that are typically used for *in vivo* studies (*i.e.*, saline lavage/surfactant dysfunction, acid induced lung injury and LPS induced lung injury) can be easily and quickly implemented using EVLP (Table 1). In addition, precise regulation of tidal volume, PEEP and other ventilator parameters during EVLP allow for modeling the mechanically induced injury that occurs during VILI. Unlike *in vivo* models, EVLP models of ALI/VILI allow for the evaluation of how specific ventilator settings influence lung injury progression without the confounding effects of changes in other physiologic parameters (Table 1). These models can be assessed by measuring pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion and histological characterization of lung tissue. The lungs can also be treated with specific drugs delivered through the perfusate or trans-trachealy to determine if any drug combination results in a minimization of lung damage during ventilation.

Pathway to evaluate efficacy of experimental treatments

Perfusate: The selected perfusate should have osmotic and oncotic pressures similar to blood and must also provide an energy source for the cells. Clinically, the perfusate is used to evenly cool the organ tissue and to remove blood, thereby preventing cell injury. It is important to note that the perfusate and all of its components have direct contact with the perfused organs and therefore are an extremely important variable in determining the outcome of EVLP.

Steen *et al*[4,5,12] developed a new perfusion solution and proved EVLP to be a viable method to improve and preserve donor lungs, and it continues to be the most popular perfusion solution used. The Pego-Fernandes group reported that their solution, low potassium dextran-glucose (LPDnac) was comparable to Perfadex (Vitrolife, Goteborg, Germany) but found saline to be inadequate[13,14]. Menezes *et al*[15] also compared Perfadex to Celsior and found lungs perfused with either exhibited similar gas exchange and histopathological findings.

Gene or molecule delivery: Multiple groups have shown that gene therapy coupled with EVLP can repair injured lungs before transplantation. Cypel *et al*[16] demonstrated that the delivery of adenoviral vector encoding human interleukin-10 (AdhIL-10) to human lungs showed improvement in arterial oxygen pressure and vascular resistance, concluding that delivery of AdhIL-10 can improve lung function. Yeung *et al*[17] later showed that ex vivo delivery of adenoviral genes to lungs is superior to *in vivo* delivery due to the decreased vector-associated inflammation and improved post-transplant lung function. Emaminia *et al*[18] also showed that delivery of adenosine A2a in the perfusate reduced the inflammatory response in acutely injured pig lungs.

Optimize the nutrients needed to sustain the lungs: Using an acellular perfusate can avoid mechanical damage to the lung over long lung perfusions[1,19] and is more widely used over cellular solutions. Pro-inflammatory cytokines can accumulate in the perfusate over time so the perfusate should be replaced periodically to avoid increased inflammation.

Trans tracheal and aerosolized agent delivery: Drugs cannot only be delivered through the perfusate, but also as an aerosolized drug trans-tracheally. Pulmonary delivery of aerosolized drugs has been modeled using an EVLP system by many groups. Dong *et al*[20] showed that administration of aerosolized chitosan-coated poly (lactide-co-glycolide) based nanoplexes containing antisense 2'-O-Methyl RNA (OMR) resulted in a significantly higher uptake of OMR in the respiratory epithelium compared to administration of OMR alone using an EVLP model. Beck-Broichsitter *et al*[21] also used an EVLP model to show that delivery of biodegradable nanoparticles may be a viable approach for drug delivery.

LARGE ANIMAL MODEL OF EVLP

Advantages

Porcine EVLP has a direct translation to the human clinic (Figure 1). In general, the advantages of this large animal model of EVLP can be broadly grouped into the following 4 categories.

Table 2 Physiologic *ex vivo* lung perfusion parameters

	Rat	Pig
Tidal volume	4-10 mL/kg	6-8 mL/kg
Positive end expiratory pressure	2-6 cm H_2O	5 cm H_2O
Flow rate	5-30 mL/min (estimated cardiac output: 25-50 mL/min per 100 g)	40% cardiac output/min (estimated cardiac output: 100 mL/min per kilogram)
Pulmonary artery pressure	13.6 cm H_2O	10-15 mmHg
Perfusate albumin concentration	2%-4%	5%-7%

Size appropriate: The swine model offers very appropriate size comparisons to humans. Because of this, comparable tidal volumes, PEEP, and perfusion times can be used for the EVLP. As a result, information obtained in this large animal model of can be rapidly and directly transferred to settings for clinical trials. This direct transfer of information to clinical trials is typically not possible when using smaller animal models. There are variations in physiologic parameters based on animal model sized (Table 2).

Similar immune system and biology: The pig has a greater similarity to humans in gene sequence and physiology compared to mice and rats which makes it a superior model[22]. This results in a simpler comparison to humans and therefore a more direct path to clinical relevance.

Allows for opportunity to perfect scale up to human size and clinic setting: Because of the pig's larger size, the opportunity exists to experiment with the exact same equipment that would be used in clinical trials[12]. The amounts of perfusate needed as well as ventilator settings are more closely related to clinical settings compared to smaller animal models. The amount of time a pig lung can be perfused is comparable to humans.

Accepted transplant model: All animals should receive care in compliance with the Principles of Laboratory Animal Care formulated by the National Society for Medical Research, the Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals.

Generally, protective settings for mechanical ventilation are used during EVLP. Typically, pigs are sedated with 40 mg/mL ketamine and anesthetized with 8 mg/kg pentobarbital. A period (about 60 min) of warm ischemia is usually implemented before starting EVLP to mimic a donor's lung. Volume-controlled ventilators are used and tidal volumes of about 4-6 mL/kg, a PEEP of about 5 cmH_2O, and a respiratory rate of about 17 breaths per minute are used. The fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) usually ranges from 100% to 40% (Table 2).

Limitations

While pigs offer one of the best parallels to humans, their cost to purchase and to care for is much higher than small animals. The amount of perfusate used on an isolated pig lung is much higher than with small animal, making each experiment much more expensive. This also makes having a high amount of replicates in an experiment very difficult. Because of the large size of an isolated pig lung, the perfusion circuit itself is custom built and requires the same equipment that would be used for a clinical perfusion.

SMALL ANIMAL MODEL OF EVLP

Overall advantages

Small animal models that have been employed in EVLP include rat, mouse, guinea pig and rabbit (Figure 2). These systems offer several distinct advantages compared to their larger counterparts. Overall, their cost is much lower. This includes initial startup cost, such as in surgical and perfusion equipment as well as the animals themselves. Because of the smaller cost, one can complete more perfusion experiments with less money and in less time than if the same study were completed using a porcine or canine model system. Additionally, one can capitalize on the higher sample size in order to aid in achieving statistical significance. Most small animal experiments use 5-8 animals per group and up to 50 animals in total per study[23-26]. These numbers are simply not feasible in larger systems and helps increase confidence in experimental data.

An inherent advantage of EVLP is the isolation of the lungs from the rest of the body. This has helped elucidate differences in the immune response of resident lung cells compared to the systemic immune response during ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) in a mouse model[26,27]. More generally, this characteristic of EVLP can be exploited to more easily vary experimental components and limit confounding factors. One avenue of research that has been pursued extensively is in the optimization lung perfusate solutions. This is an area of critical importance in the development and refining of EVLP procedures for clinical use and is a current topic of controversy.

Basic properties, such as the optimal electrolyte composition of the perfusate itself are not agreed upon. Current data are unclear as to which currently available solutions perform best[15]. Perfadex, a solution developed specifically for lung preservation, may not offer better preservation than Celsior, a heart preservation solution[15,25]. One group in Brazil compared Perfadex to a locally produced generic solution, LPDnac and found it to preserve lungs just as well[13]. The potential benefits of varying perfusate temperature and introducing vasodilators has also been studied[28]. Despite the disagreements over perfusate composition, small animal EVLP systems provide an excellent platform for further perfusate development and testing.

Rat/rabbit/guinea pig models

Of the different small animal systems used for EVLP experiments, each offers their own advantages and draw-

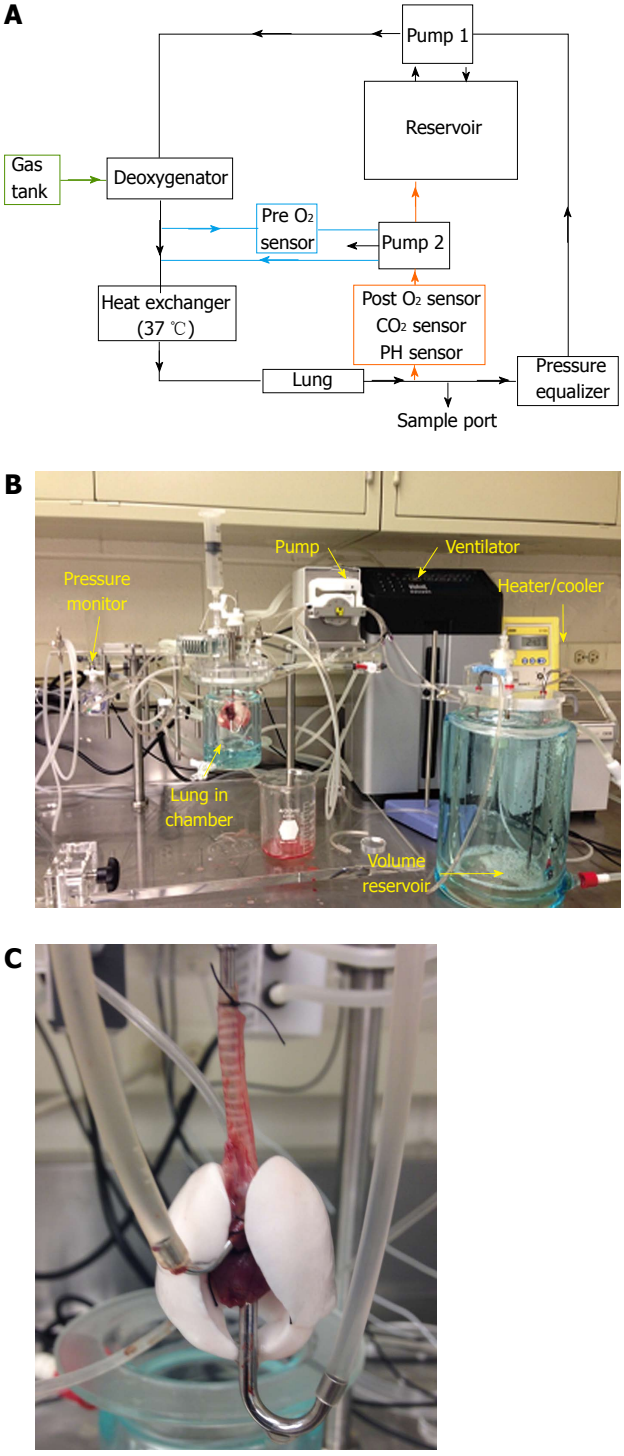


Figure 2 This diagram depicts a schematic of a small animal (rat) *ex vivo* lung perfusion circuit (A), the small animal perfusion circuit (B); a close-up of a rat lung undergoing *ex vivo* perfusion (C). Many of the same characteristics that are in the large animal circuit are present. This particular circuit has the ability for fine measurements of pressure, flow, and weight. The image back right shows the thermoregulator and the ventilator. The perfusates reservoir is in the image front right. The small animal circuit is analogous to the large animal circuit. However, due to the relative scale of the organ to the circuit, the perfusate volume needed for a complete perfusion is less. In addition, the ability to perform positive as well as negative pressure ventilation is possible. This varied ventilation an mimic both the mechanical breathing as well as natural intrathoracic breathing. The tracheal cannulation is top-center. The inflow cannula going into the pulmonary artery is from top-left and the outflow cannula going across the left atrium through the left ventricular apex is on screen right.

backs. Rat, guinea pig and rabbit models have a larger thoracic cavity than mice, making surgical procedures easier. Owing to their larger size, initial cannulation (Figure 2) is relatively simple and can be done with or without the aid of a surgical microscope[29,30]. Moreover, a rat left lung transplantation (LTX) technique has been developed and used in multiple studies[29-32].

Recent improvements have increased the success rate of this LTX technique to greater than 95%[29]. Inokawa *et al*[32] used this procedure to create a specific model of transplantation as it relates to EVLP and designed it to closely mimic clinical conditions. Rat donor lungs are explanted, stored on ice for 1 h, perfused, stored on ice again for 2.5 h and finally transplanted. This model has been used to demonstrate the therapeutic potential of low concentration carbon monoxide ventilation during perfusion[23]. Although less common, rabbit[33] and guinea pig[34] models have been used to study the onset of ischemia-reperfusion injury.

One challenge, however, with the use of these three animals as model systems is the relative scarcity of species-specific commercially available antibodies and molecular reagents. Because of this, protein studies are limited in these systems, though Fehrenbach *et al*[35] demonstrated in a rat model of EVLP that the concentration surfactant protein A (SP-A) increased following I/R using a polyclonal antibody against SP-A.

Murine models

Murine models of EVLP offer considerable advantages over rats because of the greater number of species-specific antibodies and gene probes available for experiments. This has facilitated development of a much greater body of scientific literature with regard to these types of studies. For example, the murine immune response to EVLP has been studied for over 15 years[36]. More recently, Barrenschee *et al*[37] used toll like receptor (TLR) agonists to mimic the response during infection and characterized levels of key cytokines/chemokines such as interleukin (IL)-1β, IL-6 and TNF-α. Siegl and Ulrig studied the inflammatory response of mice in high and low ventilation scenarios, including quantification of the phosphorylation of key enzymes involved in the inflammatory response[38].

An additional advantage of the mouse model is the availability of knock out (KO) lines. Deficient genes could be related to the inflammatory response, including TLR-4 deficient[39] and TNF-α deficient mice[27] or could interfere with other areas of lung function[40]. Maxey *et al*[27] used the TNF-α deficient mice in EVLP to demonstrate the importance of TNF-α in initiating the inflammatory response following I/R.

Recently, a model of mouse lung transplantation has been developed for further study of obliterative bronchiolitis. The procedure is very similar to the rat model of LPX from a technical standpoint, but to our knowledge, has not yet been used as an EVLP model[41,42]. This may be due to increased technical difficulties during mice op-

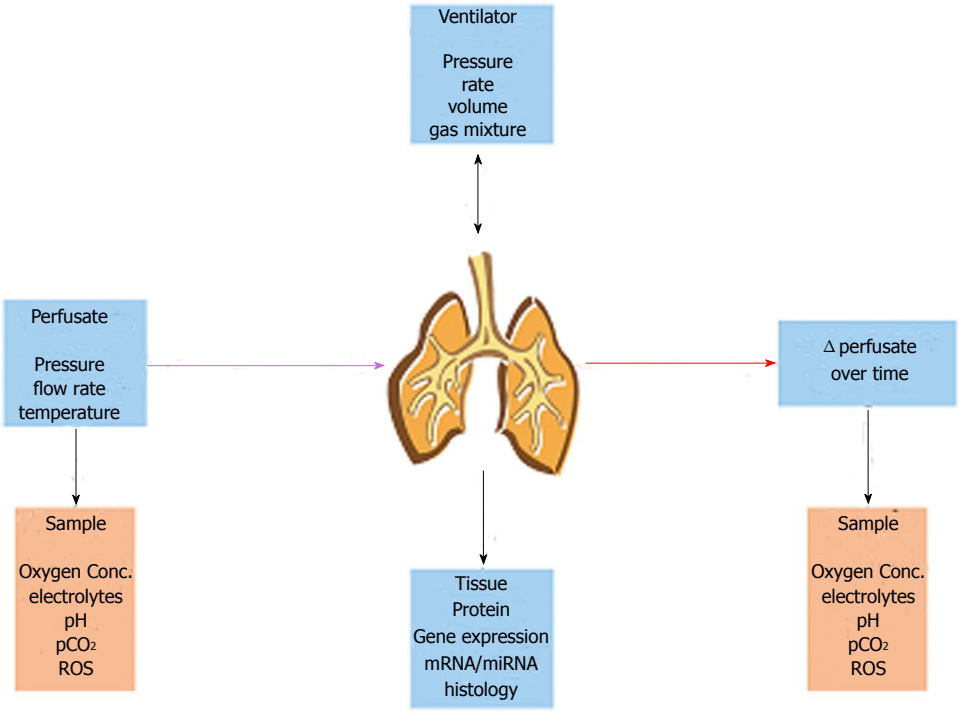


Figure 3 Diagram of what is able to be able to be measured and varied with the *ex vivo* perfusion circuit. This figure directly correlates with Table 1.

erations because of their smaller size. However, it is likely that once some initial sets of experiments combine this mouse LTX technique with EVLP, the scope of possibilities of what EVLP platforms can study will be widened.

The greatest challenge in solely relying on the murine model of EVLP is the technical difficulties involved during surgery. Mice have a smaller thoracic cavity and smaller organs than rabbits, rats or guinea pigs. Often, a surgical microscope is required to identify and isolate key structures during the heart-lung block explant[26,27]. Another drawback of this mouse model is the increased difficulty of training personnel on more technical mouse surgery procedures, which can create bottlenecks in experimental plans and ultimately slow down data acquisition. For this reason, it is likely that future studies will still utilize all small animal models, with mouse models of transplant used when necessary (for protein and gene studies) and lung mechanics studies primarily completed using a rat model.

Limitations

Owing to their small size and cost effectiveness, small animal models of EVLP are extremely convenient. When considering their use, however, several key differences need to be taken into account. Mice and rats have much shorter perfusion times than human or pig lungs. One rat model of lung transplant includes 15 min of perfusion time[32]. Other studies perfuse for 50 min[15,25,35] or 60 min[15]. One needs to keep in mind the mismatch in times scales, as murine lungs after 15 min of perfusion/ventilation are closer in damage to pig/human lungs perfused for a much longer time (4-24 h depending on the lung injury model being studied).

Yet another difference is that rodent lungs are significantly more susceptible to atelectasis. As a result, during the "ischemic" periods of a mouse model of EVLP, the lungs are still ventilated, albeit at a lower rate and in a hypoxic environment[26,27] This is unavoidable though, since without ventilation the lungs would not remain viable long enough to complete the study. Previous investigators have demonstrated that atelectasis and the subsequent reopening of fluid occluded regions can damage the lung epithelium[43,44] and exacerbate inflammation[45,46]. Therefore, it is extremely important to prevent lung damage, atelectasis and pulmonary edema because, unlike human and large animal models, a bronchoscopy cannot be performed to clear fluid from the lungs. Assuming all of these major differences are taken into account, small animal models are excellent starting points for the development of EVLP for clinical use and for the testing of therapeutics against I/R injury.

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Perfusate

Steen solution is the most popular solution used to date and acellular solutions are much more common than cellular solutions. Studies indicate a hyper-oncotic, albumin-based solution is best. The acelluar solutions have the potential benefit of not adding an exogenous antigen source and the red cells are not lysed through the mechanics of the perfusion. The acellular solutions have the potential benefit of helping to support metabolic demands. In the lung this is not as critical as in other organs since the lung itself provides the oxygen. The perfusate needs to be buffered and provide glucose and electrolytes.

Ventilator settings

Ventilator settings should be protective during EVLP for best results. In the large animal model this means a tidal volume of 4-6 cc/kg. From time to time, 10 cc/kg is used. In the rat model, a protective tidal volume is 4 cc/kg with 10 cc/kg being potentially deleterious. Depending on the hypothesis being tested and the animal model used, multiple variables can be changed on the ventilator including tidal volume, PEEP, breaths per minute, and fraction of inspired oxygen (Figure 3).

Temperature

Perfusate temperature is usually either increased temporally or based on current temperature. The perfusate temperature is usually increased until 37 ℃ is achieved. An in-line thermoregulator or perfusion heater/cooler is used to titrate the temperature. A cold or warm ischemic period may precede the actual perfusion depending on the hypothesis being tested.

Duration of perfusions

Small animal perfusions usually run between 30 min-3 h. Pig EVLP have been run for up to 14 h. The times vary greatly depending on the animal model used and the hypothesis being tested.

Pulmonary artery flow rates and pressures

Perfusate flow rates are usually set to achieve a specific pulmonary pressure or a specific pulmonary resistance. A typical experimental set-up is to have the perfusion flow rate increase incrementally over the duration of the perfusion (15-30 min time period). Once full flow (40% cardiac output) is achieved, the pulmonary artery and left atrial pressures are measured. The pulmonary vascular resistance is calculated as a function of the pressures and flow rates. In a well-functioning organ, pulmonary vascular resistance decreases over time. In a poorly functioning organ, the resistance increases. Increased resistances often mirror poor oxygenation.

CONCLUSION

EVLP has great potential to increase the lung donor pool by providing a platform for improving and evaluating lungs initially thought to be inadequate. Multiple groups across the globe are developing promising models to achieve a greater donor pool. EVLP is also being used as a model for acute lung injury to better understand how the complex mechanical forces applied to the lungs influence injury development and inflammation and to develop strategies that limit the amount of tissue damage/inflammation. EVLP is also being explored as an opportunity for administering therapeutic agents. This idea is unique in that it bypasses the patient's immune system and allows for a higher acceptance rate compared to drugs administered *in vivo*.

Both small and large animal models are advancing our knowledge on EVLP and each has their own specific advantages and disadvantages. While small animal models do not usually run for more than 1-2 h, they are economical and allow for many experiments in a short period of time. Swine models are very expensive but allow for the closest model to human lungs available and use the same equipment that would be used clinically. Since nearly 50% of patients die while waiting for a lung transplant, it is crucial to expand the donor pool. EVLP holds the most promise towards achieving this goal.

The ability to keep organs alive and perfused for extended periods of time will enable the "culture" of organs. This prolonged, perfusion will be the basis for immunomodulation and change of the endothelium through nanoparticle, gene bases, or antibody based delivery of therapeutic agents. This will be the dawning of customized medicine to tailor the transplanted organ to the individual recipient and their biology.

REFERENCES

1 **Medeiros IL**, Pêgo-Fernandes PM, Mariani AW, Fernandes FG, do Vale Unterpertinger F, Canzian M, Jatene FB. Histologic and functional evaluation of lungs reconditioned by ex vivo lung perfusion. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2012; **31**: 305-309 [PMID: 22133788]

2 **de Perrot M**, Snell GI, Babcock WD, Meyers BF, Patterson G, Hodges TN, Keshavjee S. Strategies to optimize the use of currently available lung donors. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2004; **23**: 1127-1134 [PMID: 15477105]

3 **Roman MA**, Nair S, Tsui S, Dunning J, Parmar JS. Ex vivo lung perfusion: a comprehensive review of the development and exploration of future trends. *Transplantation* 2013; **96**: 509-518 [PMID: 23694953]

4 **Steen S**, Ingemansson R, Eriksson L, Pierre L, Algotsson L, Wierup P, Liao Q, Eyjolfsson A, Gustafsson R, Sjöberg T. First human transplantation of a nonacceptable donor lung after reconditioning ex vivo. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; **83**: 2191-2194 [PMID: 17532422 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2007.01.033]

5 **Steen S**, Sjöberg T, Pierre L, Liao Q, Eriksson L, Algotsson L. Transplantation of lungs from a non-heart-beating donor. *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 825-829 [PMID: 11265950 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)04195-7]

6 **Cypel M**, Yeung JC, Liu M, Anraku M, Chen F, Karolak W, Sato M, Laratta J, Azad S, Madonik M, Chow CW, Chaparro C, Hutcheon M, Singer LG, Slutsky AS, Yasufuku K, de Perrot M, Pierre AF, Waddell TK, Keshavjee S. Normothermic ex vivo lung perfusion in clinical lung transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1431-1440 [PMID: 21488765 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1014597]

7 **Lindstedt S**, Hlebowicz J, Koul B, Wierup P, Sjögren J, Gustafsson R, Steen S, Ingemansson R. Comparative outcome of double lung transplantation using conventional donor lungs and non-acceptable donor lungs reconditioned ex vivo. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2011; **12**: 162-165 [PMID: 21123199 DOI: 10.1510/icvts.2010.244830]

8 **Aigner C**, Slama A, Hötzenecker K, Scheed A, Urbanek B, Schmid W, Nierscher FJ, Lang G, Klepetko W. Clinical ex vivo lung perfusion--pushing the limits. *Am J Transplant* 2012; **12**: 1839-1847 [PMID: 22458511]

9 **Zych B**, Popov AF, Stavri G, Bashford A, Bahrami T, Amrani M, De Robertis F, Carby M, Marczin N, Simon AR, Redmond KC. Early outcomes of bilateral sequential single lung transplantation after ex-vivo lung evaluation and reconditioning. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2012; **31**: 274-281 [PMID: 22088786]

10 **Wallinder A**, Ricksten SE, Silverborn M, Hansson C, Riise

GC, Liden H, Jeppsson A, Dellgren G. Early results in transplantation of initially rejected donor lungs after ex vivo lung perfusion: a case-control study. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2014; **45**: 40-44; discussion 44-45 [PMID: 23666375]
11 Ventilation with lower tidal volumes as compared with traditional tidal volumes for acute lung injury and the acute respiratory distress syndrome. The Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Network. *N Engl J Med* 2000; **342**: 1301-1308 [PMID: 10793162 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200005043421801]
12 **Steen S**, Liao Q, Wierup PN, Bolys R, Pierre L, Sjöberg T. Transplantation of lungs from non-heart-beating donors after functional assessment ex vivo. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2003; **76**: 244-252; discussion 253 [PMID: 12842550 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(03)00191-7]
13 **Medeiros IL**, Pêgo-Fernandes PM, Mariani AW, Fernandes FG, Unterpertinger FV, Canzian M, Jatene FB. Comparison of lung preservation solutions in human lungs using an ex vivo lung perfusion experimental model. *Clinics* (Sao Paulo) 2012; **67**: 1101-1106 [PMID: 23018310 DOI: 10.6061/clinics/2012(09)19]
14 **Soares PR**, Braga KA, Nepomuceno NA, Pazetti R, Correia AT, Cardoso PF, Bisceglijatene F, Pêgo-Fernandes PM. Comparison between Perfadex and locally manufactured low-potassium dextran solution for pulmonary preservation in an ex vivo isolated lung perfusion model. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 84-88 [PMID: 21335161 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2010.12.005]
15 **Menezes AQ**, Pêgo-Fernandes PM, Cardoso PF, Braga KA, Nepomuceno NA, Pazetti R, Correia AT, Canzian M, Santim JK, Jatene FB. Comparison of Celsior and Perfadex lung preservation solutions in rat lungs subjected to 6 and 12 hours of ischemia using an ex-vivo lung perfusion system. *Clinics* (Sao Paulo) 2012; **67**: 1309-1314 [PMID: 23184209 DOI: 10.6061/clinics/2012(11)15]
16 **Cypel M**, Liu M, Rubacha M, Yeung JC, Hirayama S, Anraku M, Sato M, Medin J, Davidson BL, de Perrot M, Waddell TK, Slutsky AS, Keshavjee S. Functional repair of human donor lungs by IL-10 gene therapy. *Sci Transl Med* 2009; **1**: 4ra9 [PMID: 20368171]
17 **Yeung JC**, Wagnetz D, Cypel M, Rubacha M, Koike T, Chun YM, Hu J, Waddell TK, Hwang DM, Liu M, Keshavjee S. Ex vivo adenoviral vector gene delivery results in decreased vector-associated inflammation pre- and post-lung transplantation in the pig. *Mol Ther* 2012; **20**: 1204-1211 [PMID: 22453765]
18 **Emaminia A**, Lapar DJ, Zhao Y, Steidle JF, Harris DA, Laubach VE, Linden J, Kron IL, Lau CL. Adenosine A_{2A} agonist improves lung function during ex vivo lung perfusion. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2011; **92**: 1840-1846 [PMID: 22051279 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2011.06.062]
19 **Pearse DB**, Sylvester JT. Spontaneous injury in isolated sheep lungs: role of resident polymorphonuclear leukocytes. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 1992; **72**: 2475-2481 [PMID: 1321112]
20 **Dong M**, Mürdter TE, Philippi C, Loretz B, Schaefer UF, Lehr CM, Schwab M, Ammon-Treiber S. Pulmonary delivery and tissue distribution of aerosolized antisense 2′-O-Methyl RNA containing nanoplexes in the isolated perfused and ventilated rat lung. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2012; **81**: 478-485 [PMID: 22565122]
21 **Beck-Broichsitter M**, Gauss J, Packhaeuser CB, Lahnstein K, Schmehl T, Seeger W, Kissel T, Gessler T. Pulmonary drug delivery with aerosolizable nanoparticles in an ex vivo lung model. *Int J Pharm* 2009; **367**: 169-178 [PMID: 18848609 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2008.09.017]
22 **Critser JK**, Laughlin MH, Prather RS, Riley LK. Proceedings of the Conference on Swine in Biomedical Research. *ILAR J* 2009; **50**: 89-94 [PMID: 19106456]
23 **Dong B**, Stewart PW, Egan TM. Postmortem and ex vivo carbon monoxide ventilation reduces injury in rat lungs transplanted from non-heart-beating donors. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; **146**: 429-36.e1 [PMID: 23260460]
24 **Lilburn DM**, Hughes-Riley T, Six JS, Stupic KF, Shaw DE, Pavlovskaya GE, Meersmann T. Validating excised rodent lungs for functional hyperpolarized xenon-129 MRI. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e73468 [PMID: 24023683 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0073468]
25 **Wittwer T**, Wahlers T, Fehrenbach A, Elki S, Haverich A. Improvement of pulmonary preservation with Celsior and Perfadex: impact of storage time on early post-ischemic lung function. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 1999; **18**: 1198-1201 [PMID: 10612378]
26 **Zhao M**, Fernandez LG, Doctor A, Sharma AK, Zarbock A, Tribble CG, Kron IL, Laubach VE. Alveolar macrophage activation is a key initiation signal for acute lung ischemia-reperfusion injury. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2006; **291**: L1018-L1026 [PMID: 16861385 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.00086.2006]
27 **Maxey TS**, Enelow RI, Gaston B, Kron IL, Laubach VE, Doctor A. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha from resident lung cells is a key initiating factor in pulmonary ischemia-reperfusion injury. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2004; **127**: 541-547 [PMID: 14762366 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2003.09.008]
28 **Wittwer T**, Wahlers T, Fehrenbach A, Cornelius JF, Elki S, Ochs M, Fehrenbach H, Albes J, Haverich A, Richter J. Combined use of prostacyclin and higher perfusate temperatures further enhances the superior lung preservation by Celsior solution in the isolated rat lung. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 1999; **18**: 684-692 [PMID: 10452345]
29 **Guo H**, Nie J, Fan K, Zheng Z, Qiao X, Li J, Wang J, Jiang K. Improvements of surgical techniques in a rat model of an orthotopic single lung transplant. *Eur J Med Res* 2013; **18**: 1 [PMID: 23295132 DOI: 10.1186/2047-783X-18-1]
30 **Kiser AC**, Ciriaco P, Hoffmann SC, Egan TM. Lung retrieval from non-heart beating cadavers with the use of a rat lung transplant model. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2001; **122**: 18-23 [PMID: 11436032 DOI: 10.1067/mtc.2001.114634]
31 **Egan TM**, Thomas Y, Gibson D, Funkhouser W, Ciriaco P, Kiser A, Sadoff J, Bleiweis M, Davis CE. Trigger for intercellular adhesion molecule-1 expression in rat lungs transplanted from non-heart-beating donors. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2004; **77**: 1048-1055; discussion 1055 [PMID: 14992925 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2003.08.023]
32 **Inokawa H**, Sevala M, Funkhouser WK, Egan TM. Ex-vivo perfusion and ventilation of rat lungs from non-heart-beating donors before transplant. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2006; **82**: 1219-1225 [PMID: 16996911 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2006.05.004]
33 **Fiser SM**, Tribble CG, Long SM, Kaza AK, Cope JT, Laubach VE, Kern JA, Kron IL. Lung transplant reperfusion injury involves pulmonary macrophages and circulating leukocytes in a biphasic response. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2001; **121**: 1069-1075 [PMID: 11385373 DOI: 10.1067/mtc.2001.113603]
34 **Sakuma T**, Tuchihara C, Ishigaki M, Osanai K, Nambu Y, Toga H, Takahashi K, Ohya N, Kurihara T, Matthay MA. Denopamine, a beta(1)-adrenergic agonist, increases alveolar fluid clearance in ex vivo rat and guinea pig lungs. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2001; **90**: 10-16 [PMID: 11133887]
35 **Fehrenbach H**, Tews S, Fehrenbach A, Ochs M, Wittwer T, Wahlers T, Richter J. Improved lung preservation relates to an increase in tubular myelin-associated surfactant protein A. *Respir Res* 2005; **6**: 60 [PMID: 15969762 DOI: 10.1186/1465-9921-6-60]
36 **von Bethmann AN**, Brasch F, Nüsing R, Vogt K, Volk HD, Müller KM, Wendel A, Uhlig S. Hyperventilation induces release of cytokines from perfused mouse lung. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998; **157**: 263-272 [PMID: 9445308 DOI: 10.1164/ajrccm.157.1.9608052]
37 **Barrenschee M**, Lex D, Uhlig S. Effects of the TLR2 agonists MALP-2 and Pam3Cys in isolated mouse lungs. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13889 [PMID: 21124967 DOI: 10.1371/journal.

pone.0013889]
38 **Siegl S**, Uhlig S. Using the one-lung method to link p38 to pro-inflammatory gene expression during overventilation in C57BL/6 and BALB/c mice. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e41464 [PMID: 22848503 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0041464]
39 **Zanotti G**, Casiraghi M, Abano JB, Tatreau JR, Sevala M, Berlin H, Smyth S, Funkhouser WK, Burridge K, Randell SH, Egan TM. Novel critical role of Toll-like receptor 4 in lung ischemia-reperfusion injury and edema. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2009; **297**: L52-L63 [PMID: 19376887 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.90406.2008]
40 **Al-Jayyoussi G**, Price DF, Francombe D, Taylor G, Smith MW, Morris C, Edwards CD, Eddershaw P, Gumbleton M. Selectivity in the impact of P-glycoprotein upon pulmonary absorption of airway-dosed substrates: a study in ex vivo lung models using chemical inhibition and genetic knockout. *J Pharm Sci* 2013; **102**: 3382-3394 [PMID: 23670704 DOI: 10.1002/jps.23587]
41 **Li W**, Goldstein DR, Bribriesco AC, Nava RG, Spahn JH, Wang X, Gelman AE, Krupnick AS, Kreisel D. Surgical technique for lung retransplantation in the mouse. *J Thorac Dis* 2013; **5**: 321-325 [PMID: 23825768]
42 **Okazaki M**, Krupnick AS, Kornfeld CG, Lai JM, Ritter JH, Richardson SB, Huang HJ, Das NA, Patterson GA, Gelman AE, Kreisel D. A mouse model of orthotopic vascularized aerated lung transplantation. *Am J Transplant* 2007; **7**: 1672-1679 [PMID: 17511692]
43 **Ghadiali SN**, Gaver DP. Biomechanics of liquid-epithelium interactions in pulmonary airways. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol* 2008; **163**: 232-243 [PMID: 18511356 DOI: 10.1016/j.resp.2008.04.008]
44 **Yalcin HC**, Hallow KM, Wang J, Wei MT, Ou-Yang HD, Ghadiali SN. Influence of cytoskeletal structure and mechanics on epithelial cell injury during cyclic airway reopening. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2009; **297**: L881-L891 [PMID: 19700641 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.90562.2008]
45 **Huang Y**, Crawford M, Higuita-Castro N, Nana-Sinkam P, Ghadiali SN. miR-146a regulates mechanotransduction and pressure-induced inflammation in small airway epithelium. *FASEB J* 2012; **26**: 3351-3364 [PMID: 22593544]
46 **Huang Y**, Haas C, Ghadiali SN. Influence of Transmural Pressure and Cytoskeletal Structure on NF-κB Activation in Respiratory Epithelial Cells. *Cell Mol Bioeng* 2010; **3**: 415-427 [PMID: 22956984]

P- Reviewers: Chang NS, Puntel RL, Xavier-Elsas P
S- Editor: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Wu HL

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i2.16

World J Exp Med 2014 May 20; 4(2): 16-26
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Wound healing reaction: A switch from gestation to senescence

Maria-Angeles Aller, Jose-Ignacio Arias, Luis-Alfonso Arraez-Aybar, Carlos Gilsanz, Jaime Arias

Maria-Angeles Aller, Jaime Arias, Surgery Department, School of Medicine, Complutense University of Madrid, 28040 Madrid, Spain
Jose-Ignacio Arias, General Surgery Unit, Monte Naranco Hospital, Monte Naranco Hospital, Oviedo, Asturias, 33012 Oviedo, Spain
Luis-Alfonso Arraez-Aybar, Department of Human Anatomy and Embryology Ⅱ, School of Medicine, Complutense University of Madrid, 28040 Madrid, Spain
Carlos Gilsanz, General Surgery Unit, Sureste Hospital, Arganda del Rey, 28040 Madrid, Spain
Author contributions: Arias JI and Gilsanz C revised the bibliography about wound healing; Arraez-Aybar LA revised the mechanisms involved in embryonic development; Aller MA and Arias JI integrated all the revised knowledge and wrote the final version of the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Jaime Arias, MD, PhD, Surgery Department, School of Medicine, Complutense University of Madrid, Plaza Ramón y Cajal s/n, 28040 Madrid, Spain. jariasp@med.ucm.es
Telephone: +34-91-3941388 Fax: +34-91-3947115
Received: June 5, 2013 Revised: February 28, 2014
Accepted: March 13, 2014
Published online: May 20, 2014

Abstract

The repair of wounded tissue during postnatal life could be associated with the upregulation of some functions characteristic of the initial phases of embryonic development. The focusing of these recapitulated systemic functions in the interstitial space of the injured tissue is established through a heterogeneous endothelial barrier which has excretory-secretory abilities which in turn, would induce a gastrulation-like process. The repair of adult tissues using upregulated embryonic mechanisms could explain the universality of the inflammatory response against injury, regardless of its etiology. However, the early activation after the injury of embryonic mechanisms does not always guarantee tissue regeneration since their long-term execution is mediated by the host organism.

Key words: Wound healing; Repair; Embryonic mechanisms; Vitelline; Amniotic

Core tip: In this review, we propose an integrative molecular point of view about wound healing. Wound healing could be associated with the upregulation of functions characteristic of embryonic development. The repair of adult tissues using upregulated embryonic mechanisms could explain the ubiquity of the inflammatory response against injury, regardless of its etiology.

Aller MA, Arias JI, Arraez-Aybar LA, Gilsanz C, Arias J. Wound healing reaction: A switch from gestation to senescence. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(2): 16-26 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i2/16.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i2.16

INTRODUCTION

Wound tissue repair can be realized by regeneration and/or fibrosis. While regeneration describes the specific substitution of the injured tissue, tissue fibrosis displays an unspecific form of healing in which the wounded tissue heals by scar formation[1,2]. Since repair by fibrosis can be considered an unsuccessful attempt of wound tissue repair by regeneration, the fibrotic process supposedly represents an insufficient repair method and, therefore, a pathological response. This is the reason why the inflammatory response associated with scar formation is also commonly labeled pathological. In this way, regenerative healing has a notable absence of inflammatory cell activity[3-5]. Consequently, inflammatory response mediators have been a focus of investigation in studies aiming to curtail scarring[5,6].

The standard view of inflammation as a reaction to injury or infection might need to be expanded to account

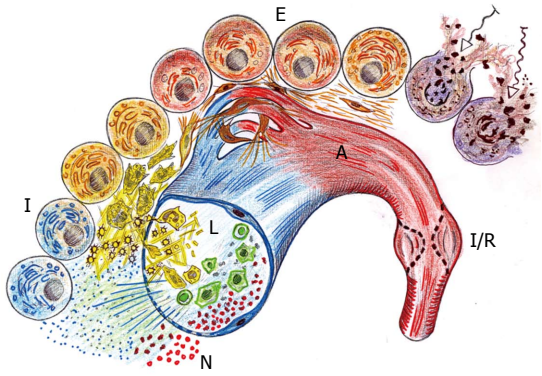


Figure 1 Schematic representation of the different stages of wound repair. During the post-traumatic local inflammatory response three successive and overlapped phases: in the arterial side of the microcirculation (red), a nervous (N) or immediate phase with ischemia-reperfusion (I/R) occurs; in the post-capillary venule (blue), an immune (I) or intermediate phase with a leukocytic (L) phenotype is expressed; and, finally an endocrine (E) or late with an angiogenic (A) phenotype is developed, which implies the capillaries neoformation.

for the inflammatory processes induced by other types of adverse conditions[7]. The human diseases that are associated with these conditions, including atherosclerosis, asthma, type 2 diabetes and neurodegenerative diseases, are all characterized by chronic low-grade inflammation[7]. However, human aging can be explained by the emerging concept of inflamm-ageing, *i.e.*, - a combination of inflammation and aging[8]. Inflamm-ageing seems to favor the onset of typical age-related diseases like atherosclerosis, dementia, osteoporosis and cancer[9]. Inflammatory mechanisms are also involved in physiological processes, like physical exercise, embryonic development and gestation, and indeed there is the hypotheses that the evolution of the living species could be based on inflammatory remodeling of organisms induced by environmental factors[10]. It has also been proposed that, although fibrosis is often initially linked to a strong inflammatory response, there are specific mediators and pathways contributing to the pathogenesis of fibrosis that are distinct from the mechanisms driving inflammation. Thus, it is assumed that to design effective therapy for fibrotic diseases, we need to begin viewing fibrosis as a pathological process distinct from inflammation[11].

PHASES OF THE SKIN WOUND HEALING REACTION

The multiple pathophysiological mechanisms that overlap during the progression of the skin wound healing reaction may explain the lack of consensus on the number of phases involved in this reaction. Thus, the common description of the wound healing evolution includes three classical stages: the inflammatory phase to contain the injury and prevent infection; the proliferative phase characterized by new tissue formation, *i.e.*, granulation and epithelial tissues; and the remodeling phase with extracellular matrix reorganization[4,12]. However, some authors describe four healing phases: hemostasis and coagulation, with the formation of a provisional wound matrix; inflammation with neutrophil and monocyte recruitment; proliferation and repair, with the formation of granulation tissue and the restoration of the vascular network, as well as re-epithelialization; and remodeling that occurs from day 21 to up to 1 year after injury. In this phase, collagen Ⅲ, which was produced in the proliferative phase, is now replaced by collagen I and the acute wound metabolic activity slows down and finally stops[1,13]. Additionally, five phases of the wound healing reaction have also been described: hemostasis; inflammation; cellular migration and proliferation; protein synthesis; and wound contraction and remodeling[14].

In the above-mentioned descriptions of the wound healing reaction, the role attributed to inflammation is very limited and noteworthy. On the contrary, we have proposed an inflammatory etiopathogenic hypothesis of the wound healing evolution. According to this idea, inflammation could be the basic mechanism that drives the nature of the different stages of wound repair[15]. Likewise, inflammation could facilitate the integration of the pathophysiological mechanisms involved in the different phases of wound repair by scar formation[15,16]. In essence, the post-traumatic local acute inflammatory response is described as a succession of three functional phases of possible trophic meaning to the wounded tissue: nervous or immediate with an ischemia-reperfusion phenotype; immune or intermediate with a leukocytic phenotype; and endocrine or late with an angiogenic phenotype[15,16] (Figure 1).

In turn, we have suggested that these phenotypes could represent the expression of trophic functional systems of increasing metabolic complexity[17]. Therefore, it could be considered that, after the injury, the metabolic ability of every phenotype would be conditioned by the biochemical mechanisms used to provide the energy sources for cell functions[15,17]. These three inflammatory phenotypes hypothetically expressed in the traumatized tissue during tissue repair by scarring could help to integrate the etiopathogenic mechanisms expressed in each evolutive phase. In this way, these inflammatory phenotypes would associate the genetic factors, upregulated and/or downregulated, with metabolic, functional and histological alterations[17].

The interstitial space is the battle field where the inflammatory response takes place. In the successive phases of the inflammatory response, the interstitial space of the injured tissues is successively occupied by molecules, inflammatory cells, bacteria and finally by a mesenchymal-derived tissue, the granulation tissue. In summary, the inflammatory response could be viewed as a series of three overlapping successive phases with increasingly complex trophic functional systems for using oxygen since it evolves from ischemia to neovascularization[15,17].

The first or immediate phase has been referred to as the nervous phase because sensory (stress, inflammatory, pain and analgesia) and motor (contraction and relaxation) alterations, including vasomotor changes, respond

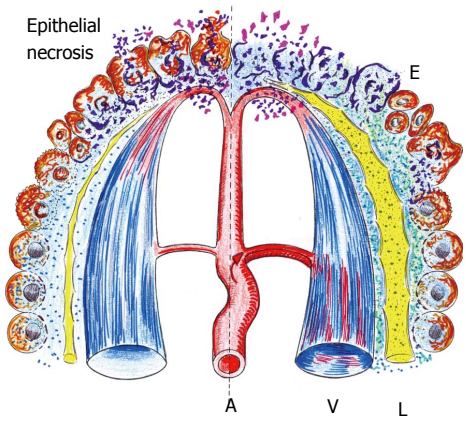


Figure 2 First or immediate phase of the acute inflammatory response. On the left side, a schematic representation in which the tissue suffers the injury and therefore necrosis of the epithelial cells are produced. In turn, on the right side, the beginning of the tissue inflammatory response in response to necrosis is shown. This initial phase presents ischemia-reoxygenation and interstitial edema (E) with interstitial infiltration of mediators of the stress response as well as substrates including glucose, amino acids and lipids. In addition, the lymphatic circulation (L) is activated. A: Arterial microcirculation; V: Post-capillary venous circulation.

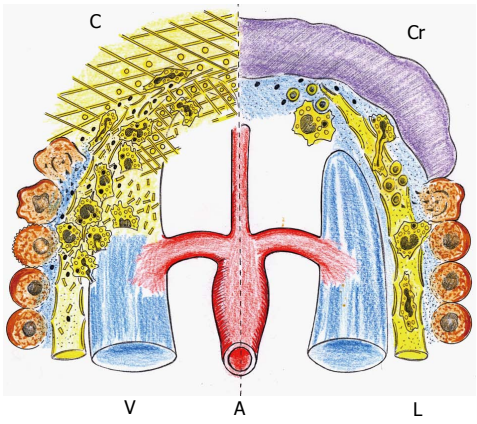


Figure 3 Immune or intermediate phase of the post-traumatic acute inflammatory response. Interstitial infiltration by platelets and leukocytes, all of them entrapped in the provisional extracellular matrix (left). Underlying the wound crust (Cr) that is formed later, the leukocytes change their phenotype to promote the resolution of the inflammatory response and wound repair by re-epithelization and scar formation (right). C: Coagulation with fibrin-platelet clot. A: Arterial microcirculation; V: Post-capillary venous circulation; L: Lymphatic circulation.

to the injury. This early pathological activity of the body's nociceptor pathways is associated with stress through the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal and sympathetic-adrenal medullary axes, the sympathetic nervous system and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. This initial phase presents ischemia-reoxygenation, oxidative and nitrosative stress, and interstitial edema with selective interstitial infiltration by mediators of the stress response, such as catecholamines, adrenocorticotrophic hormone, glucocorticoids and angiotensin, as well as glucose, amino acids and lipids, all of them derived from earlier metabolic alterations, including hyperglycemia, protein catabolism and lipolysis. In addition, interstitial edema favors nutrition by diffusion through the injured tissue and activation of the lymphatic circulation (circulatory switch)[2,15,17] (Figure 2).

In the succeeding immune or intermediate phase of the acute inflammatory response, the wounded tissue that has previously suffered ischemia-reperfusion is infiltrated by inflammatory cells and sometimes by bacteria. This phase presents enzymatic stress with migration of macrophages and dendritic cells to lymph nodes, where they activate T and B cells, *i.e.*, innate and adaptive immune response. Interstitial invasion by leukocytes would create a new trophic axis.

Accumulating evidence demonstrates that platelets contribute to the initiation and propagation of the inflammatory process. These cells are replete with secretory granules, α-granules, dense granules and lysosomes. Platelet α-granules influence inflammation both by expressing receptors that facilitate adhesion of platelets to other vascular cells (*e.g.*, P-selectin) and by releasing a wide range of chemokines, among which CXCL4 and CLXL7 are the most abundant. Also, platelet α-granules contain a variety of both pro- and anti-angiogenic proteins. Growth factors stored in α-granules include vascular endothelium growth factor (VEGF), platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), epidermal growth factor (EGF), hepatocyte growth factor and insulin-like growth factor (IGF). Platelet dense granules, on the other hand, contain high concentrations of low molecular weight compounds that potentiate platelet activation (*e.g.*, Adenosine diphosphate, serotonin and calcium[18,19] (Figure 3).

In the post-traumatic local inflammatory response, the activation of the innate immune system is not only based on the recognition of danger signals or danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), but also relies on the presence of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)[20]. DAMPs and PAMPs are recognized by pattern-recognition receptors (PRRs) that are either cytoplasmic, membrane-bound or secreted. The most intensely studied PRRs are the Toll-like receptors (TLRs), in addition to innate immune receptors, the nucleotide-binding and oligomerization domain (NOD)-like receptors (NLRs) and retinoic acid-inducible gene I (RIG-I)-like receptors (RLRs)[21]. In particular, NLRs form central molecular platforms that organize signaling complexes, such as inflammasomes and NOD signalosomes. The term inflammasome was coined to describe the high molecular weight complex that activates inflammatory caspases and cytokine interleukin-1 (IL-1)β[22]. All these receptors activate signaling cascades that is based on enzymatic intra- and extra-cellular digestion[15,17] and lead to activation of mitogen activated protein kinases and nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB)[21,22]. Once activated, TLRs induce different signaling cascades depending on the adaptor protein, ultimately leading to the activation of the transcription factors NF-κB, AP-1 and interferon-regulatory factor[22]. The regulatory event of NF-κB activation is the phosphorylation of inhibitor of kappa B kinase complex (IKB) proteins by the IKB kinase

complex, which leads to IKB protein ubiquitylation and subsequent degradation. This results in the release of cytoplasmic NF-κB complexes, which then translocate to the nucleus and drive the expression of target genes[23]. Thus, the expression of inducible genes leading to the synthesis of cytokine receptors, adhesion molecules and autacoids in the traumatized tissue is induced[24].

Leukocytes transverse the subendothelial basement membrane during their immunological surveillance patrol through tissues. This process, called diapedesis, is strongly enhanced under the influence of inflammation. The preferred extravasation sites of leukocytes are the venules[25]. Immediately after injury, extravasated neutrophils are entrapped in the fibrin-platelet clot. In the interstitium, the recruited and activated neutrophils begin the debridement of devitalized tissue and attack infectious agents. To perform this task, they release a large variety of active antimicrobial substances (ROS, cationic peptides, eicosanoids) and proteases (elastase, cathepsin G, proteinase 3 and urokinase-type plasminogen activator)[12]. Neutrophils also store pentraxins 3 and release it in response to inflammatory signals because it is an acute phase reactant[26] (Figure 3).

As monocytes extravasate from the blood vessel they become activated and differentiate into mature tissue macrophages. This transformation implies major changes in gene expression and cell function. The differential activation of macrophages is involved in many facets of tissue injury and inflammation. M1 macrophages express pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-6, IL-23 and interferon (IFN)-γ, as well as reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, which are involved in phagocytosis and the killing of microbes. They also promote type I immune responses[27]. M2 or alternatively activated macrophages fail to express pro-inflammatory mediators and are involved in angiogenesis, tissue remodeling and the resolution of inflammation. Therefore, they are supposed to promote repair functions[12,27]. T-helper cells play critical roles in modulating the differential activation of type 2 macrophages. T-helper (Th1) cells produce pro-inflammatory cytokines, *i.e.*, IFN-γ and TNF-α, which skew macrophages into the M1 phenotype. In contrast, type 2 T-helper (Th2) cells produce IL-4, IL-5, IL-13 and IL-10, which are responsible for inducing the alternatively activated macrophages or M2 macrophages[28]. Finally, it has been speculated that metabolic changes in the local milieu may program dendritic cells and other innate cells at the site of inflammation to induce a heterogeneous Th2 response[29]. Although neutrophils, macrophages and T lymphocytes are considered central in the pathogenesis of post-traumatic inflammation, recent studies also imply the involvement of mast cells and B lymphocytes as modulators of the inflammatory response and wound healing[12,30].

In the final and lasting phase of the wound healing reaction, the angiogenic phenotype is predominant because angiogenesis permits numerous substances, including hormones, to be transported by the blood circulation. Angiogenesis is based on endothelial sprouting or intussusceptive (nonsprouting) microvascular growth[31]. However, angiogenesis can also result from the recruitment of several cell populations or selected subpopulations of bone marrow-derived endothelial progenitor cells[32]. Angiogenesis is regulated by numerous "*classic*" factors, including VEGF, FGF-2, transforming growth factor (TGFs) angiopoietins, PDGF, thrombospondin-1 and angiostatin. Non-classic endogenous stimulators of angiogenesis include erythropoietin, angiotensin Ⅱ, endothelins, adrenomedulin, adipokines, neuropeptide-Y, vasoactive intestinal peptide and substance P[31]. VEGF and FGF-2 occupy the center stage in the angiogenesis field. They act in synergy to stimulate endothelial cell function during angiogenesis in tissue repair[33]. In this last phase, the endocrine phenotype favors nutrition mediated by the blood capillaries. Through initial and excessive proliferation, the endothelial cells could play a key role in the previous phase as antioxidant and anti-enzymatic cells, including induction of the acute phase response, considered the humoral arm of innate immunity[15,16]. Angiogenesis is closely associated with granulation tissue formation and remodeling. As granulation tissue forms in the healing wound, the vascular cells intermingle with the provisional matrix, which is composed mainly of fibrin, fibronectin and vitronectin[33]. Then, the new blood vessels associated with fibroblasts and macrophages replace the fibrin matrix with granulation tissue, forming a new substrate for keratinocyte migration[34] (Figure 1).

The resolution of the inflammatory response is mainly mediated by families of local-activity mediators that are biosynthesized from the essential fatty acids eicosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid. These resolution mediators are termed resolvins, maresins and protectins[35]. Inflammation resolution is also mediated by lipoxins that are generated through platelet-leukocyte interactions[36] (Figure 3). It has been also proposed that regulatory T cells (Treg cells) have evolved to provide a complementary immunological arm to a physiological tissue-protecting mechanism driven by low oxygen tension, *i.e.*, hypoxia, in the inflamed tissues. The hypoxia-adenosinergic pathways might govern the production of immunosuppressive molecules that have already been implicated in the activities of Treg cells[37]. In this way, Treg cells could exert their suppressive function with local downregulation of immune response, inducing "*immunodormancy*" and protecting tissues from collateral tissue damage, thus improving healing[37]. The progressive resolution of inflammation favors wound re-epithelization. Fibroblasts can also contribute to the resolution of inflammation by withdrawing survival signals and normalizing chemokine gradients, thereby allowing infiltrating leukocytes to undergo apoptosis or leave the tissues through the draining lymphatics[38]. Remodeling begins two to three weeks after injury and lasts for a year or more. Most of the endothelial cells, macrophages and myofibroblasts, undergo apoptosis, leaving a mass that contains few cells and consists mostly of collagen and other extracellular-matrix proteins[34]. However, the prognosis of extensive and deep wounds is not entirely satisfactory because of

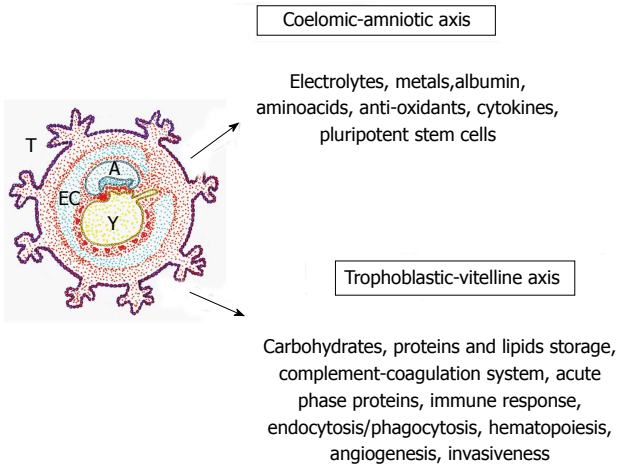


Figure 4 Hypothesized functions by ontogenic recapitulation in the traumatized tissue. These functions could be similar to the extra-embryonic coelomic-amniotic and trophoblastic-vitelline functions during early embryonic development. The extra-embryonic coelom or exocoelomic cavity surrounds the blastocyst, which is composed of the amnion and the primary yolk sac. EC: Exocoelomic cavity; A: Amnion; T: Trophoblast; Y: Yolk sac or vitellum.

scar formation and loss of normal function and skin appendages. Therefore, reducing the formation of scars and re-establishing the normal anatomy and function of the skin and its appendages have become the aim of regenerative medical research[39,40].

WOUND HEALING REPAIR USING EMBRYONIC MECHANISMS

Inflammation, whether acute or chronic, produces tissue remodeling[9]. In this way, it has been proposed that the inflammatory response has features in common with tissue development, which requires involution of pre-existing tissue elements[15,16]. The ability of the tissues to involute or dedifferentiate could represent a return to early stages of development[41]. Particularly, involution or dedifferentiation could form an effective defense mechanism to escape death after injury. Thus, this mechanism could make retracing an ancient, efficient and well-known route possible for repairing the injured tissue, just like the initial phases of embryonic development[2,41]. The correlation that can be established between the embryonic and the inflammatory events suggests that the results obtained from research into both great fields of knowledge would favor each other and promote their development[41].

In the adult body, many pathways that play an essential role during embryological development are inactivated later in life, although some of them may be transiently expressed during the adult repair process[41,42]. This ability of the tissues to involute or dedifferentiate could constitute an effective solution against any type of injury. Through dedifferentiation, tissues have the chance to reform and remodel themselves according to the new environmental situation imposed on them[10].

The fetus is uniquely capable of healing skin wounds without scar formation and provides a model of ideal tissue repair. Understanding the biology of this process may allow us to modulate wound healing in children and adults to become more fetal-like[43-45]. Tissue repair in the embryo and to a certain extent in adults too, appears to recapitulate those cell machineries used by embryos to undergo the natural tissue movements of morphogenesis, such as gastrulation and neural tube closure[41,46]. One key difference between embryonic and adult repair, which may explain why one heals perfectly and the other scars, is the presence of an inflammatory response at sites of adult repair while there is none in the embryo. However, total knockdown of inflammation is clearly not going to be an optimal treatment for post-natal scarring[46]. The infiltration of platelets, mast cells, neutrophils and macrophages which characterizes the early postnatal wound is greatly diminished in fetal wounds[43,47]. However, fetal wound healing is additionally characterized by a distinct extracellular matrix, anti-inflammatory and growth factor profile and a more important role for stem cells[5,6]. If so, we could hypothesize that to promote adult wound repair by regeneration, current therapies need to be attempted to recapitulate singular aspects of the fetal regenerative phenotype[5]. The evidence suggests that there may be an early critical window in postnatal wound healing that may be amenable to manipulation so as to provide a permissive environment for scarless wound healing to proceed[5].

In this way, the early post-traumatic inflammatory response could recapitulate ontogeny by re-expressing two hypothetical extra-embryonic trophic axes, that is amniotic and yolk sac or vitelline in the interstitial space of the injured tissue[41] (Figure 4). Likewise, the body could be repaired according to embryonic biochemical patterns through the expression of extra-embryonic functions. If so, the early inflammatory steps could represent the postnatal debut of ancestral biochemical mechanisms that were used for normal embryonic development. The re-expression of these ancient mechanisms is perhaps hard to recognize because they are anachronistic during postnatal life and are established in a different environmental medium[41,48] (Table 1).

After fertilization, the first stage of embryogenesis is the zygote, which undergoes cleavage by mitosis. When the morula stage is reached, the embryo establishes polarity. The cells bind tightly to each other, forming a compact sphere with two cell layers. The outer most layer becomes the trophoblast, giving rise to the placenta, and the inner cells become the inner cell mass, giving rise to the embryo and the remaining structures, including the amnion, yolk sac and allantoids[49] (Figure 4). The molecular and cellular contributions of the extra-embryonic tissues surrounding the fetus, namely the exocoelomic cavity, the amnion, the trophoblast and the yolk sac, to the interstitial space located between them, the mesoderm, are essential for organogenesis. In fact, the intra-embryonic mesoderm generated during gastrulation may represent the internalization of the functions that charac-

Table 1 Upregulation of extraembryonic phenotypes that could be involved in the different types of the wound healing reaction

Phenotypes	Embryonic functions	Phases of the inflammatory response	Phases of the wound healing reaction	
Extraembryonic phenotypes	Coelomic-amniotic axis	Nervous phase	Neurogenic systemic response	Stress response - Biogenic amines release Sensitive and motor alterations Ischemia-reperfusion - Local oxidative and nitrosative stress Hydroelectrolytic alterations - Edema Inflammation blood cells - Coagulation
	Trophoblastic-vitelline axis	Immune phase	Bone-marrow related response	Enzymatic stress Corticosuprarenal hormones - Local storage Hematopoietic stem cells Mesenchymal stem cells Endothelial progenitor cells
Embryonic phenotypes	Gastrulation	Angiogenic phase	Remodeling response	Myofibroblasts Angiogenesis Endothelial egg Re-epithelization Fibrosis

terize these extra-embryonic functions[50].

The hypothetical recapitulation of these initial phases of the embryonic development during the early surgical inflammatory response would imply the expression of functions similar to the extra-embryonic structures. Accordingly, the phenotype that could be adopted by the inflamed interstitium may induce the accumulation of fluid with similar characteristics to coelomic fluid. In essence, interstitial edema with high levels of proteins, in particular albumin, as well as electrolytes, metals, amino acids, antioxidants, cytokines and cholesterol-derived hormone, would be produced in the inflammatory exudates[51,52]. Amnion-derived multipotent progenitor cells also secrete a unique combination of cytokines and growth factors called the "*amnion-derived cellular cytokine solution*" which establishes a connection between mesenchymal and epithelial cells during embryo development[53]. In this sense, the amniotic fluid surrounding the fetus may therefore be an extension of the extracellular space of the fetal tissues[54]. The amniotic-like phenotype could also offer the stem cell a hypoxic and hydrated interstitial axis with cytokines and growth factors, favoring not only nutrition by diffusion, but also transport, excretion and bacteriostatic and anti-inflammatory protection[54,55] (Figure 4).

The wall of the secondary yolk sac is formed by an external mesothelial layer, a vascular mesenchyme, with blood islands that promote the development of hematopoiesis and angiogenesis[56] and an endodermal layer facing the yolk sac cavity[53]. The mesothelial and endodermal layers have absorptive functions and are active in endocytosis/digestion[56,57]. In addition, the endodermal layer is the source of several proteins including acute phase proteins[58]. A major function of the yolk sac is carbohydrate, protein and lipid accumulation for embryo nutrition (*vitellum*)[57]. In addition, through the synthesis and release of acute phase proteins, this extra-embryonic phenotype reduces oxidative, nitrosative and enzymatic stress, activates the complement-coagulation system, regulates the lipid metabolism and favors phagocytosis[59]. During trophoblast differentiation, trophoblastic cells also exhibit intense phagocytic activity leading to events as diverse as engulfment and destruction of extracellular material and the production of inflammatory mediators that may modulate both the immune and trophoblast invasiveness[60,61] (Figure 4).

The molecular and cellular contribution made by the above-mentioned extra-embryonic membranes, *i.e.,* exocoelomic cavity, amnion, yolk sac and trophoblast to the intra-embryonic mesoderm, could be essential for embryo development and organogenesis. Moreover, these primitive extra-embryonic structures can be internalized by the embryo at early development stages[50]. Consequently, the hypothesized re-expression of these extra-embryonic functions after injury during postnatal life could be a key process needed to repair the injured organism[2,41]. If so, the recapitulation of extra-embryonic functions through the organism could be internalized into the injured interstitium, thus inducing a process similar to the early embryonic process for tissue repair by regeneration and/or fibrosis.

INFLAMMATORY ENDOTHELIAL EGG

It could be proposed that recapitulation of extra-embryonic functions during wound repair is made up through the activation of two functional axes, namely: the coelomic-amniotic axis and the trophoblastic-vitelline axis. Both axes would polarize in the interstitium of the wounded tissue, thus promoting the development of a new tissue (Figure 4).

In surgical-related inflammation, the interstitium is surrounded by an inflamed heterogeneous endothelium. Thus, this inflammatory endothelium would get cellular and molecular mediators through the post-capillary venule endothelium, the high endothelial venule endothelium in the lymph nodes and, to a lesser degree, through the capillary endothelium. Ultimately, the lymphatic endothelium has a basic excretory function. The complex made up by this inflamed heterogeneous endothelium and the interstitial space of the injured tissue surrounded by it

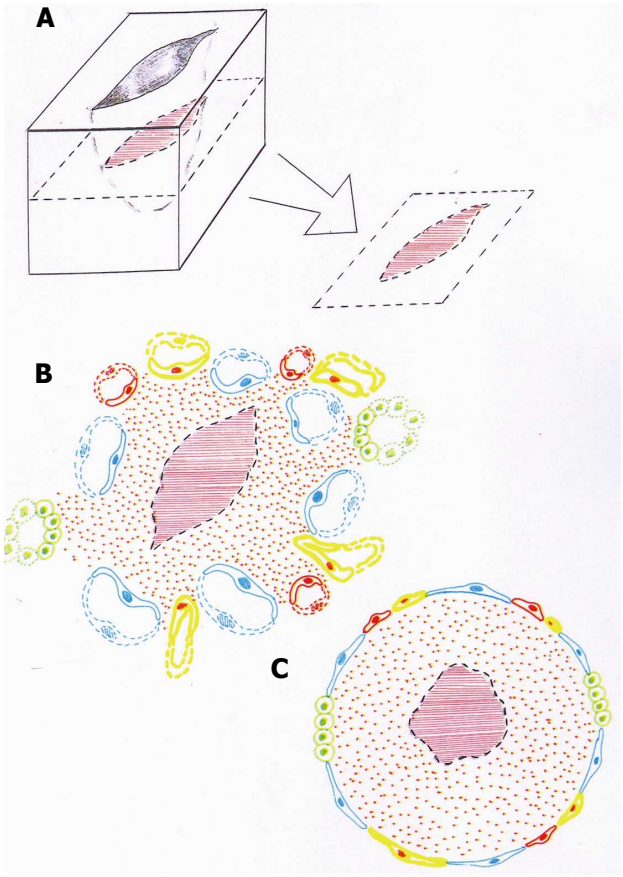


Figure 5 Figurative representation of a skin wound. The wound (A) is surrounded by different types of inflammatory venous, arterial and lymphatic endothelia (B). This heterogeneous inflammatory endothelium could be represented like a sheath of the inflamed interstitium that surrounds in turn the wound or broken tissue (C).

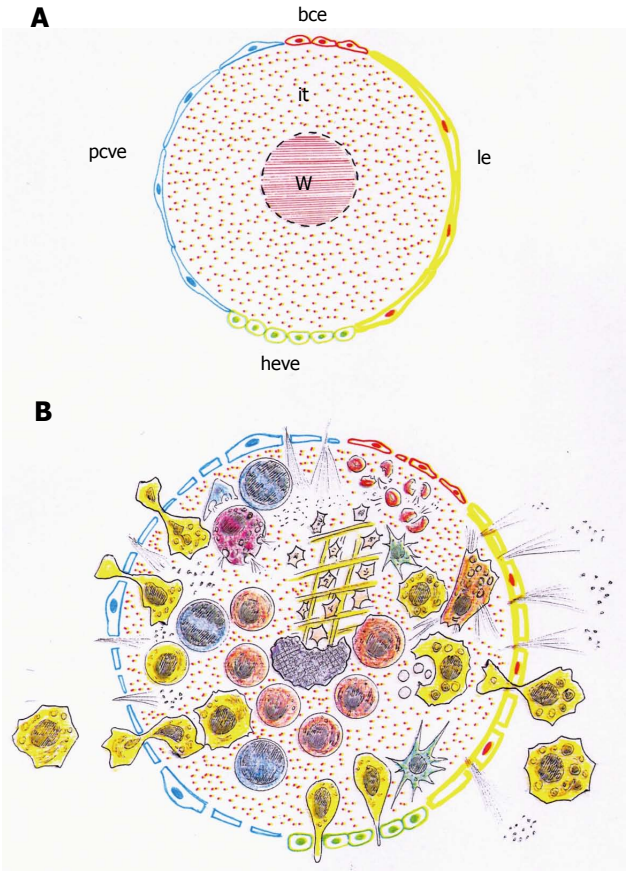


Figure 6 Schematic representations of the heterogeneous endothelium that surrounds the wounded tissue. A: The endothelium that cover the wound (W) and the damaged interstitium (it) are made up by the post-capillary venous endothelium (pcve), the high endothelial venular endothelium (heve), the lymphatic endothelium (le) and the blood capillary endothelium (bce); B: The inflammatory response is produced into the injured interstitium. The inflammatory mediators, molecules and cells, invade this interstitial space crossing through a sheath of heterogeneous endothelia.

has been compared with an "*endothelial egg*"[62] (Figures 5 and 6). Thus, in the interior of this heterogeneous endothelial sheath, the successive evolutive phases of wound repair with interstitial edema, activation of the lymphatic circulation and a hypoxic environment that could be an ideal stem cell niche, can be represented. Then, hemostasis by the formation of a platelet-fibrin clot occurs. After that, neutrophils, monocytes and lymphocytes are recruited and finally, new tissue is formed by regeneration, *i.e.*, keratinocytes and granulation tissue, *i.e.*, fibroblasts and endothelial cells, which form a substrate to complete the wound repair by fibrosis[12,14,30,34] (Figures 6 and 7).

However, cutaneous wound healing is not only a local process, but also a complex process involving systemic inflammatory alterations related to the stress response[2,62]. The magnitude of this systemic response may reflect the demands of the "*endothelial egg*" required for wound repair (Figure 7). In this sense, we have been trying to establish similarities between the complex pathophysiological mechanisms developed in wound healing and the pluripotential extra-embryonic pathways during embryonic development[2,10,41,62]. In this way, the recapitulation of coelomic-amniotic and trophoblast-vitelline functions is selectively integrated into the injured area. The recapitulation of the extra-embryonic coelomic and amniotic functions could be represented by initially activating the systemic neurogenic axis, while the latter recapitulation of the trophoblast and yolk sac functions would be carried out by activating the systemic bone-marrow axis (Figure 7).

RECAPITULATED COELOMIC-AMNIOTIC FUNCTIONS: A NEUROGENIC SYSTEMIC RESPONSE

The pathological neuromuscular response secondary to a wound induces sensory changes (stress, inflammatory pain, analgesia) and motor alterations (fight-to-flight and withdrawal reflexes, tachycardia and vasoconstriction-vasodilation). This upregulated extra-embryonic phenotype would induce a sudden and early neurogenic response with systemic cardiovascular, hemodynamic and hydroelectrolytic alterations[2,62]. Systemic and local ischemia-reperfusion produce sudden hydroelectrolytic changes associated with abnormal ion transport[63]. In this early response, cells that produce substances for export first

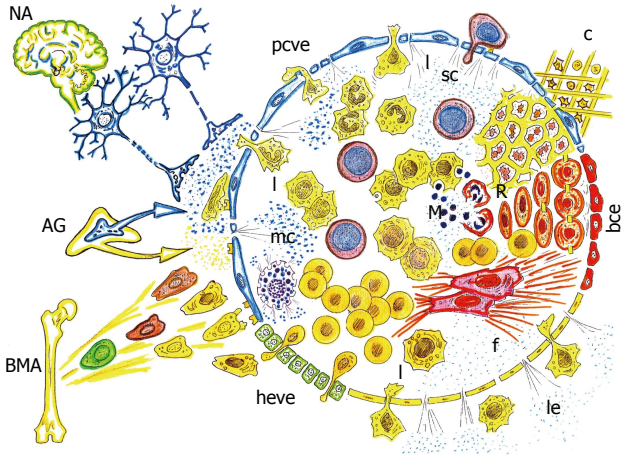


Figure 7 Neurogenic and bone marrow-related axes coupled in the inflamed endothelial egg, after wound. The upregulated extra-embryonic functions, *i.e.*, coelomic-amniotic or neurogenic, and trophoblastic-vitelline or bone marrow-related, are focused in the endothelial inflammatory egg, favoring the induction of a gastrulation-like phenotype, which evolves towards re-epithelization and fibrosis (scar) in post-natal life. NA: Neurogenic axis; AG: Adrenal gland; BMA: Bone marrow-related Axis; c: Coagulation; sc: Stem cell; mc: Mast cell. R: Regeneration; f: Fibrosis; l: Leukocytes; M: Microbiome. ve: Post-capillary venous endothelium; heve: High endothelial venular endothelium; le: Lymphatic endothelium; bce: Blood capillary endotelium; pcve: Psot capillary venous endothelium.

synthesize and then store large amounts of molecules, such as biogenic amines and neuropeptides in secretory vesicles ready for rapid release[64]. In this early neurogenic response, the activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical, sympathetic-adrenal medullary and renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axes occur, with the release of catecholamines, glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids. Consequently, selective accumulation of these mediators in the "*endothelial inflammatory egg*" is produced because endothelial permeability is increased, especially in postcapillary venules[2,62] (Figure 7).

RECAPITULATED TROPHOBLASTIC-VITELLINE FUNCTIONS: A BONE-MARROW-RELATED RESPONSE

The inflammatory bone marrow-related response induced by wounds could be considered both a key and complementary arm of the systemic response to injury. The inflammatory activation of the bone marrow stem cell niche indicates the stimulation of hematopoietic stem cells and mesenchymal stem cells, both which are multipotent stem cells[65-67]. Hematopoietic stem cells are the progenitors of all blood and immune cells. Macrophages generated from hematopoietic stem cells are the dominant phagocytes at wound-healing sites. Profibrotic macrophages, in particular, are intimately involved in wound healing through the production of mediators that directly activate fibroblasts, including transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β), PDGF and IGF-1[28]. Nevertheless, although macrophages are required for the initiation and maintenance of fibrosis, they are also involved in its suppression, resolution and reversal[28,68]. Therefore, macrophage activation is best considered as a continuous spectrum of phenotypic characteristics[69]. In this context, circulating endothelial cells have also proved to be an important marker of vascular remodeling associated with wound healing. Angiogenesis is needed during embryonic development and plays important roles in wound healing and tissue ischemia throughout postnatal life[62]. Although the major physiological role of circulating endothelial progenitor cells is to maintain vascular integrity, they can also participate in revascularization of ischemic wounded tissues[70].

Furthermore, the upregulated trophoblastic-vitelline phenotype could mediate the inflammatory response through a lipid metabolic switch linked to steroid and acute phase response protein synthesis, respectively[2]. This slower response would therefore be developed by steroidogenic cells that store very little steroid hormones, in which case a rapid steroidogenic response would require immediate synthesis of new steroids, such as cortisol. The increase of the acute phase protein synthesis, *i.e.,* innate immunity, by the gut-liver axis is linked with the acute phase response and follows the upregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines[2,41,62].

COUPLING THE RECAPITULATED EXTRA-EMBRYONIC AXES IN THE "*INFLAMMATORY ENDOTHELIAL EGG*"

The systemic recapitulated extra-embryonic axes, *i.e.*, coelomic-amniotic and trophoblastic-vitelline, are focused and coupled in the endothelial inflammatory egg. This interstitial integration of both pathological axes, *i.e.*, neurogenic and bone-marrow-related in the wounded tissue, could finally induce a gastrulation-like process[41] (Figures 6 and 7). Gastrulation, which involves the "*de novo*" formation of reparative tissue, is based on the recapitulation of the intra-embryonic mesenchyme formation process[41]. In essence, the integration of both extraembryonic-related phenotypes coelomic-amniotic and trophoblastic-vitelline by the multipotent mesenchymal stem/stromal cells[67,71,72] would support the functional and metabolic heterogeneity needed for successively modulating their injured microenvironment during embryo development[50]. Therefore, the interaction of extra-embryonic functional axes recapitulated after injury in the interstitium of the damaged tissue allows for the recapitulation of the mechanisms characteristic of gastrulation, subsequently forming a mesenchyme in the endothelial inflammatory egg similar to that present in the early development phases[2,62].

Therefore, the early post-injury induction of extra-embryonic mechanisms that favors the beginning of the repair process[1] is undermined throughout the evolution of the wound healing reaction. In this way, the tissue that initiates its development inside the hypothesized endothe-

lial egg seems to suffer an immunological injury from the host organism. This reaction, similar to what takes place in organ transplantation, *i.e.*, host-versus-graft reaction, would explain the involution of the newly formed tissue until constructing, in the long term, the devitalized scar tissue. The study of those factors that induce this switch in the host organism, by which it gives up its gestating role and adopts a rejection attitude against already newly formed tissue, would explain why some authors consider that, in order to achieve tissue repair, inflammation is not needed[11].

CONCLUSION

In the current review, the wound healing reaction is considered a systemic inflammatory response made up by upregulated extra-embryonic functions, *i.e.*, coelomic-amniotic and trophoblastic-vitelline. The confluence and overlapping of these functions produce an injured tissue that would adopt an egg-like configuration that is one mainly made up of two structures: a round interstitial space surrounded by a heterogeneous endothelium. Therefore, cellular and molecular mediators from the extra-embryonic functions recapitulated by the injured organisms would induce a gastrulation-like process in this inflammatory endothelial egg from which tissue repair is produced either by regeneration and/or fibrosis.

REFERENCES

1 **Reinke JM**, Sorg H. Wound repair and regeneration. *Eur Surg Res* 2012; **49**: 35-43 [PMID: 22797712 DOI: 10.1159/000339613]
2 **Aller MA**, Blanco-Rivero J, Arias JI, Balfagon G, Arias J. The wound-healing response and upregulated embryonic mechanisms: brothers-in-arms forever. *Exp Dermatol* 2012; **21**: 497-503 [PMID: 22716244 DOI: 10.1111/j.16000625.2012.01525.x]
3 **Günter CI**, Machens HG. New strategies in clinical care of skin wound healing. *Eur Surg Res* 2012; **49**: 16-23 [PMID: 22797612 DOI: 10.1159/000339860]
4 **Profyris C**, Tziotzios C, Do Vale I. Cutaneous scarring: Pathophysiology, molecular mechanisms, and scar reduction therapeutics Part I. The molecular basis of scar formation. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2012; **66**: 1-10; quiz 11-12 [PMID: 22177631 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2011.05.055)]
5 **Leung A**, Crombleholme TM, Keswani SG. Fetal wound healing: implications for minimal scar formation. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2012; **24**: 371-378 [PMID: 22572760 DOI: 10.1097/MOP.0b013e3283535790]
6 **Rolfe KJ**, Grobbelaar AO. A review of fetal scarless healing. *ISRN Dermatol* 2012; **2012**: 698034 [PMID: 22675640 DOI: 10.5402/2012/698034]
7 **Medzhitov R**. Origin and physiological roles of inflammation. *Nature* 2008; **454**: 428-435 [PMID: 18650913 DOI: 10.1038/nature07201]
8 **Franceschi C**, Bonafè M, Valensin S, Olivieri F, De Luca M, Ottaviani E, De Benedictis G. Inflamm-aging. An evolutionary perspective on immunosenescence. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2000; **908**: 244-254 [PMID: 10911963 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2000.tb06651.x]
9 **Caruso C**, Lio D, Cavallone L, Franceschi C. Aging, longevity, inflammation, and cancer. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2004; **1028**: 1-13 [PMID: 15915584]
10 **Aller MA**, Arias N, Fuentes-Julian S, Blazquez-Martinez A, Argudo S, Miguel MP, Arias JL, Arias J. Coupling inflammation with evo-devo. *Med Hypotheses* 2012; **78**: 721-731 [PMID: 22405850 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2012.02.018]
11 **Wynn TA**, Ramalingam TR. Mechanisms of fibrosis: therapeutic translation for fibrotic disease. *Nat Med* 2012; **18**: 1028-1040 [PMID: 22772564 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2807)]
12 **Eming SA**, Hammerschmidt M, Krieg T, Roers A. Interrelation of immunity and tissue repair or regeneration. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2009; **20**: 517-527 [PMID: 19393325 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcdb.2009.04.009]
13 **Stojadinovic A**, Carlson JW, Schultz GS, Davis TA, Elster EA. Topical advances in wound care. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **111**: S70-S80 [PMID: 18793796 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.07.042]
14 **Monaco JL**, Lawrence WT. Acute wound healing an overview. *Clin Plast Surg* 2003; **30**: 1-12 [PMID: 12636211]
15 **Aller MA**, Arias JL, Nava MP, Arias J. Posttraumatic inflammation is a complex response based on the pathological expression of the nervous, immune, and endocrine functional systems. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2004; **229**: 170-181 [PMID: 14734796]
16 **Aller MA**, Arias JL, Sánchez-Patán F, Arias J. The inflammatory response: an efficient way of life. *Med Sci Monit* 2006; **12**: RA225-RA234 [PMID: 17006415]
17 **Aller MA**, Arias JI, Giner M, Losada M, Cruz A, Alonso-Poza A, Arias J. Oxygen-related inflammatory wound phenotypes. In: Middleton JE, Huntington NY. Wound healing: Process, phases and promoting. New York, NY: Nova Science Publishers, 2011: 1-26
18 **Nurden AT**, Nurden P, Sanchez M, Andia I, Anitua E. Platelets and wound healing. *Front Biosci* 2008; **13**: 3532-3548 [PMID: 18508453]
19 **Blair P**, Flaumenhaft R. Platelet alpha-granules: basic biology and clinical correlates. *Blood Rev* 2009; **23**: 177-189 [PMID: 19450911 DOI: 10.1016/j.blre.2009.04.001]
20 **Matzinger P**. The danger model: a renewed sense of self. *Science* 2002; **296**: 301-305 [PMID: 11951032]
21 **Kluwe J**, Mencin A, Schwabe RF. Toll-like receptors, wound healing, and carcinogenesis. *J Mol Med* (Berl) 2009; **87**: 125-138 [PMID: 19089397 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-008-0426-z]
22 **Martinon F**, Mayor A, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes: guardians of the body. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2009; **27**: 229-265 [PMID: 19302040 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.021908.132715]
23 **Ghosh S**, Hayden MS. New regulators of NF-kappaB in inflammation. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2008; **8**: 837-848 [PMID: 18927578 DOI: 10.1038/nri2423]
24 **Hanada T**, Yoshimura A. Regulation of cytokine signaling and inflammation. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2002; **13**: 413-421 [PMID: 12220554]
25 **Eble JA**, Niland S. The extracellular matrix of blood vessels. *Curr Pharm Des* 2009; **15**: 1385-1400 [PMID: 19355976 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.002873]
26 **Manfredi AA**, Rovere-Querini P, Bottazzi B, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. Pentraxins, humoral innate immunity and tissue injury. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2008; **20**: 538-544 [PMID: 18579363 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2008.05.004]
27 **Glaros T**, Larsen M, Li L. Macrophages and fibroblasts during inflammation, tissue damage and organ injury. *Front Biosci* (Landmark Ed) 2009; **14**: 3988-3993 [PMID: 19273328]
28 **Mosser DM**, Edwards JP. Exploring the full spectrum of macrophage activation. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2008; **8**: 958-969 [PMID: 19029990 DOI: 10.1038/nri2448]
29 **Pulendran B**, Artis D. New paradigms in type 2 immunity. *Science* 2012; **337**: 431-435 [PMID: 22837519 DOI: 10.1126/science.1221064]
30 **Eming SA**, Krieg T, Davidson JM. Inflammation in wound repair: molecular and cellular mechanisms. *J Invest Dermatol* 2007; **127**: 514-525 [PMID: 17299434]
31 **Ribatti D**, Conconi MT, Nussdorfer GG. Nonclassic endogenous novel [corrected] regulators of angiogenesis. *Pharmacol*

Rev 2007; **59**: 185-205 [PMID: 17540906]
32 **Garin G**, Mathews M, Berk BC. Tissue-resident bone marrow-derived progenitor cells: key players in hypoxia-induced angiogenesis. *Circ Res* 2005; **97**: 955-957 [PMID: 16284185]
33 **Chan LK**. Current thoughts on angiogenesis. *J Wound Care* 2009; **18**: 12-14, 16 [PMID: 19131912]
34 **Gurtner GC**, Werner S, Barrandon Y, Longaker MT. Wound repair and regeneration. *Nature* 2008; **453**: 314-321 [PMID: 18480812 DOI: 10.1038/nature07039]
35 **Ariel A**, Serhan CN. Resolvins and protectins in the termination program of acute inflammation. *Trends Immunol* 2007; **28**: 176-183 [PMID: 17337246 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2007.02.007]
36 **Yacoubian S**, Serhan CN. New endogenous anti-inflammatory and proresolving lipid mediators: implications for rheumatic diseases. *Nat Clin Pract Rheumatol* 2007; **3**: 570-579; quiz 1 p following 589 [PMID: 17906612 DOI: 10.1038/ncprheum0616]
37 **Sitkovsky MV**. T regulatory cells: hypoxia-adenosinergic suppression and re-direction of the immune response. *Trends Immunol* 2009; **30**: 102-108 [PMID: 19201652 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2008.12.002]
38 **Buckley CD**, Pilling D, Lord JM, Akbar AN, Scheel-Toellner D, Salmon M. Fibroblasts regulate the switch from acute resolving to chronic persistent inflammation. *Trends Immunol* 2001; **22**: 199-204 [PMID: 11274925]
39 **Fu X**, Li H. Mesenchymal stem cells and skin wound repair and regeneration: possibilities and questions. *Cell Tissue Res* 2009; **335**: 317-321 [PMID: 19034523 DOI: 10.1007/s00441-008-0724-3]
40 **Gauglitz GG**, Jeschke MG. Combined gene and stem cell therapy for cutaneous wound healing. *Mol Pharm* 2011; **8**: 1471-1479 [PMID: 21657247 DOI: 10.1021/mp2001457]
41 **Aller MA**, Arias JI, Arias J. Pathological axes of wound repair: gastrulation revisited. *Theor Biol Med Model* 2010; **7**: 37 [PMID: 20840764 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4682-7-37]
42 **Selman M**, Pardo A, Kaminski N. Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis: aberrant recapitulation of developmental programs? *PLoS Med* 2008; **5**: e62 [PMID: 18318599 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0050062]
43 **Adzick NS**, Longaker MT. Scarless fetal healing. Therapeutic implications. *Ann Surg* 1992; **215**: 3-7 [PMID: 1731647]
44 **Longaker MT**, Whitby DJ, Ferguson MW, Lorenz HP, Harrison MR, Adzick NS. Adult skin wounds in the fetal environment heal with scar formation. *Ann Surg* 1994; **219**: 65-72 [PMID: 8297179]
45 **Ferguson MW**, Whitby DJ, Shah M, Armstrong J, Siebert JW, Longaker MT. Scar formation: the spectral nature of fetal and adult wound repair. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1996; **97**: 854-860 [PMID: 8628785]
46 **Redd MJ**, Cooper L, Wood W, Stramer B, Martin P. Wound healing and inflammation: embryos reveal the way to perfect repair. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2004; **359**: 777-784 [PMID: 15293805]
47 **Wulff BC**, Parent AE, Meleski MA, DiPietro LA, Schrementi ME, Wilgus TA. Mast cells contribute to scar formation during fetal wound healing. *J Invest Dermatol* 2012; **132**: 458-465 [PMID: 21993557 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2011.324]
48 **Arias JI**, Aller MA, Prieto I, Arias A, de Julian Z, Yang H, Arias J. The Amazing Power of Cancer Cells to Recapitulate Extraembryonic Functions: The Cuckoo's Tricks. *J Oncol* 2012; **2012**: 521284 [PMID: 21969829 DOI: 10.1155/2012/521284]
49 **De Miguel MP**, Arnalich Montiel F, Lopez Iglesias P, Blazquez Martinez A, Nistal M. Epiblast-derived stem cells in embryonic and adult tissues. *Int J Dev Biol* 2009; **53**: 1529-1540 [PMID: 19757397 DOI: 10.1387/ijdb.072413md]
50 **Romen JW**, Lütjen-Drecoll E. Funktionell Embryology. Sttutgart: Schattauer, 2006: 1-37
51 **Jauniaux E**, Gulbis B. Fluid compartments of the embryonic environment. *Hum Reprod Update* 2000; **6**: 268-278 [PMID: 10874572 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/6.3.268]
52 **Calleja-Agius J**, Jauniaux E, Muttukrishna S. Inflammatory cytokines in maternal circulation and placenta of chromosomally abnormal first trimester miscarriages. *Clin Dev Immunol* 2012; **2012**: 175041 [PMID: 21977049 DOI: 10.1155/2012/175041]
53 **Uberti MG**, Pierpont YN, Ko F, Wright TE, Smith CA, Cruse CW, Robson MC, Payne WG. Amnion-derived cellular cytokine solution (ACCS) promotes migration of keratinocytes and fibroblasts. *Ann Plast Surg* 2010; **64**: 632-635 [PMID: 20395817 DOI: 10.1097/SAP.0b013e3181c39351]
54 **Bellini C**, Boccardo F, Bonioli E, Campisi C. Lymphodynamics in the fetus and newborn. *Lymphology* 2006; **39**: 110-117 [PMID: 17036631]
55 **Shaw SW**, David AL, De Coppi P. Clinical applications of prenatal and postnatal therapy using stem cells retrieved from amniotic fluid. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **23**: 109-116 [PMID: 21386681 DOI: 10.1097/GCO.0b013e32834457b1]
56 **Fraser ST**, Baron MH. Embryonic fates for extraembryonic lineages: New perspectives. *J Cell Biochem* 2009; **107**: 586-591 [PMID: 19415688 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22165]
57 **Gulbis B**, Jauniaux E, Cotton F, Stordeur P. Protein and enzyme patterns in the fluid cavities of the first trimester gestational sac: relevance to the absorptive role of secondary yolk sac. *Mol Hum Reprod* 1998; **4**: 857-862 [PMID: 9783845]
58 **Siegel N**, Rosner M, Hanneder M, Freilinger A, Hengstschläger M. Human amniotic fluid stem cells: a new perspective. *Amino Acids* 2008; **35**: 291-293 [PMID: 17710362 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-007-0593-1]
59 **Nakazawa F**, Alev C, Jakt LM, Sheng G. Yolk sac endoderm is the major source of serum proteins and lipids and is involved in the regulation of vascular integrity in early chick development. *Dev Dyn* 2011; **240**: 2002-2010 [PMID: 21761483 DOI: 10.1002/dvdy.22690]
60 **Bevilacqua E**, Hoshida MS, Amarante-Paffaro A, Albieri-Borges A, Zago Gomes S. Trophoblast phagocytic program: roles in different placental systems. *Int J Dev Biol* 2010; **54**: 495-505 [PMID: 19757392 DOI: 10.1387/ijdb.082761eb]
61 **Knöfler M**. Critical growth factors and signalling pathways controlling human trophoblast invasion. *Int J Dev Biol* 2010; **54**: 269-280 [PMID: 19876833 DOI: 10.1387/ijdb.082769mk]
62 **Aller MA**, Arias JI, Prieto I, Gilsanz C, Arias A, Yang H, Arias J. Surgical inflammatory stress: the embryo takes hold of the reins again. *Theor Biol Med Model* 2013; **10**: 6 [PMID: 23374964 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4682-10-6]
63 **Eisenhut M**. Changes in ion transport in inflammatory disease. *J Inflamm* (Lond) 2006; **3**: 5 [PMID: 16571116 DOI: 10.1186/1476-9255-3-5]
64 **Crivellato E**, Nico B, Ribatti D. The chromaffin vesicle: advances in understanding the composition of a versatile, multifunctional secretory organelle. *Anat Rec* (Hoboken) 2008; **291**: 1587-1602 [PMID: 19037853 DOI: 10.1002/ar.20763]
65 **Lepperdinger G**. Inflammation and mesenchymal stem cell aging. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2011; **23**: 518-524 [PMID: 21703839 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2011.05.007]
66 **Kunisaki Y**, Frenette PS. The secrets of the bone marrow niche: Enigmatic niche brings challenge for HSC expansion. *Nat Med* 2012; **18**: 864-865 [PMID: 22673997 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2825]
67 **Li H**, Fu X. Mechanisms of action of mesenchymal stem cells in cutaneous wound repair and regeneration. *Cell Tissue Res* 2012; **348**: 371-377 [PMID: 22447168 DOI: 10.1007/s00441-012-1393-9]
68 **Koh TJ**, DiPietro LA. Inflammation and wound healing: the role of the macrophage. *Expert Rev Mol Med* 2011; **13**: e23 [PMID: 21740602 DOI: 10.1017/S1462399411001943]
69 **Brancato SK**, Albina JE. Wound macrophages as key regulators of repair: origin, phenotype, and function. *Am J Pathol* 2011; **178**: 19-25 [PMID: 21224038 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2010.08.003]
70 **Bayless KJ**, Johnson GA. Role of the cytoskeleton in forma-

tion and maintenance of angiogenic sprouts. *J Vasc Res* 2011; **48**: 369-385 [PMID: 21464572 DOI: 10.1159/000324751]
71 **Otto WR**, Wright NA. Mesenchymal stem cells: from experiment to clinic. *Fibrogenesis Tissue Repair* 2011; **4**: 20 [PMID: 21902837 DOI: 10.1186/1755-1536-4-20]
72 **De Miguel MP**, Fuentes-Julián S, Blázquez-Martínez A, Pascual CY, Aller MA, Arias J, Arnalich-Montiel F. Immunosuppressive properties of mesenchymal stem cells: advances and applications. *Curr Mol Med* 2012; **12**: 574-591 [PMID: 22515979]

P- Reviewers: Annalisa G, Zou ZM **S- Editor**: Zhai HH
L- Editor: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Wu HL

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2014 August 20; 4(3): 27-45

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJEM World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 3 August 20, 2014

Contents

World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Volume 4 Number 3 August 20, 2014

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Experimental Medicine (*World J Exp Med*, *WJEM*, online ISSN 2220-315X, DOI: 10.5493) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJEM covers topics concerning clinical laboratory medicine (applied and basic research in hematology, body fluid examination, cytomorphology, genetic diagnosis of hematological disorders, thrombosis and hemostasis, and blood typing and transfusion), biochemical examination (applied and basic research in laboratory automation and information system, biochemical methodology, and biochemical diagnostics), clinical microbiology (microbiological laboratory quality control and management; microbiological specimen collection and its influencing factors; conventional, automatic or molecular detection of clinical microorganisms; monitoring of bacterial and fungal drug resistance, drug resistance mechanisms, and rational application of antibiotics; monitoring and control of nosocomial infections), immunodiagnostics (laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases, tumor markers and their application, laboratory diagnosis of autoimmune diseases, and immunotechnology), and clinical laboratory management (laboratory quality control and management, traceability and calibration, information management system and laboratory automation, and laboratory biosafety management).

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJEM*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Experimental Medicine is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx

PUBLICATION DATE
August 20, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i3.27

World J Exp Med 2014 August 20; 4(3): 27-37
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

Multiple sclerosis and the role of immune cells

Rune A Høglund, Azzam A Maghazachi

Rune A Høglund, Azzam A Maghazachi, Department of Physiology, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Oslo, Oslo N-0317, Norway
Author contributions: All authors contributed to the paper.
Supported by University of Oslo, Biogen-Idec Global, Inc., and Teva Norway, AS
Correspondence to: Dr. Azzam A Maghazachi, Department of Physiology, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Oslo, P.O. Box 1072 Blindern, N-0317 Oslo, Norway. azzam.maghazachi@medisin.uio.no
Telephone: +47-97-147592 Fax: +47-97-147592
Received: May 13, 2014 Revised: May 29, 2014
Accepted: July 17, 2014
Published online: August 20, 2014

Abstract

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a complex disease with many different immune cells involved in its pathogenesis, and in particular T cells as the most recognized cell type. Recently, the innate immune system has also been researched for its effect on the disease. Hence, cells of the immune system play vital roles in either ameliorating or exacerbating the disease. The genetic and environmental factors, as well as the etiology and pathogenesis are of utmost importance for the development of MS. An insight into the roles play by T cells, B cells, natural killer cells, and dendritic cells in MS and the animal model experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, will be presented. Understanding the mechanisms of action for current therapeutic modalities should help developing new therapeutic tools to treat this disease and other autoimmune diseases.

Key words: Multiple sclerosis; Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis; Chemokines; Chemokine receptors; Glatiramer acetate; Central nervous system; T cells; B cells; Natural killer cells; Dendritic cells

Core tip: The role played by various immune cells in either ameliorating or exacerbating multiple sclerosis is discussed.

Høglund RA, Maghazachi AA. Multiple sclerosis and the role of immune cells. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(3): 27-37 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i3/27.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i3.27

INTRODUCTION

Recent developments in multiple sclerosis (MS) research have been staggering, including numerous new therapies either approved or at the brink of approval, new oral therapies and leaps made in genetics. This article will focus on the role that immune cells play in MS, and their involvement in mediating the effects of drugs used to treat relapsing-remitting (RR) MS patients.

GENERAL FEATURES OF MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

The basic pathology of MS was recognized almost 150 years ago by Charcot who described a disease caused by sclerotic plaques in the central nervous system (CNS) of those affected[1]. There were other reports describing the pathology before this time, but failed to recognize it as a distinct disease[2]. It is reasonable to believe that MS has been prevalent also before these descriptions, as the disease often arises early in life[3]. Today, we know that MS is a chronic inflammatory, autoimmune, demyelinating and degenerative disease of the CNS[4]. Substantial discoveries have been made regarding its therapeutics, pathogenesis and genetics. Yet, there is no cure and no recognized definite cause, be it genetic, microbial or environmental. Although no definite cause of MS has yet been identified, substantial amounts of research point to a dual multifactorial influence of both genetics and environmental elements contributing to the development of the disease[5,6].

Genetic factors

The genetic component was first described after family studies were performed, with a family recurrence rate of about 20%-33%, and about 10-12 fold risk increase in first degree and three folds in second degree relatives[7,8]. For siblings or children of patients with MS, the overall risk was estimated to be 3%-5%[9], but twin studies show a higher risk (25%) if the sibling is a monozygotic twin[10,11].

The first risk allele to be identified was the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class Ⅱ haplotype HLA-DRB 1501 in the early 1970's[12], which is also the allele with the strongest association with the disease[13]. The road to discovering additional alleles was complicated and hampered by insufficient methods[4,14]. In recent years large genome wide association studies (GWAS) using single nucleotide polymorphisms and comparing diseased to healthy individuals have made it possible to identify numerous alleles associated with MS with sufficient power and significance, most of these with low to modest MS risk association[5,15]. Researchers with the help from a huge GWAS consortium[13] identified over 50 susceptible loci, many of which are associated with the immune system, including genes encoding receptors for interleukin (IL)-2 and IL-7[15]. Other genes important for cytokine pathways include CXCR5, IL-12A, IL-12β, IL-12Rβ1 among others associated with the cytokine tumor necrosis factor α, as well as genes associated with co-stimulatory molecules such as CD80, CD86, CD37 were also described. GWAS studies have even identified risk association with genes that are important for current and new MS therapies including IL-2Rα (daclizumab) and VCAM1 (natalizumab), as well as genes related to environmental risk factor vitamin D_3[13]. Such knowledge while adding new information supports much of what is known about MS pathogenesis. Still, further research into these risk alleles is needed to improve our understanding of their associations with the disease.

Environmental factors

While family studies support a genetic association, they also show that genetics alone are not enough to develop MS, as shown by homozygous twins not both acquiring disease, even though one of them is diagnosed with MS. Other information supporting environmental effects include the geographic increase of MS with increasing latitude[16], and how individuals migrating from low-risk to high-risk areas acquire higher susceptibility if the migration occurs during childhood. Hence, the incidence of developing MS correlates with the risk in areas of childhood residence[4]. Additionally, studies have shown risk association during months of birth as spring births have higher risk of MS than autumn births[17].

Several environmental factors have been investigated. One hypothesis is that vitamin D_3 deficiency increases the risk of MS, as increased latitude is also correlated with lower blood vitamin D_3 levels. For instance, ecological studies showed the amount of exposure to sunlight was inversely correlated with the risk of MS, both by regional distribution and association with altitude, as well as by individual exposure to sunlight[18]. Sunlight is the main source of human vitamin D_3 through conversion of 7-dehydrocholesterol to previtamin D_3 in the skin, and through further metabolic steps to active hormone 1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D_3[19]. It was also shown how vitamin D_3 intake may reduce the risk of MS because of latitude dependent deficiency, for instance in communities which consume higher amounts of vitamin D_3 rich fish[20]. These studies also point out the difficulties of such concepts, as confounding factors may be quite prevalent. There is also association with the experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model, an animal model for MS, as dosing of 1,25(OH)2D_3 prevented the disease[21,22]. These effects may be induced by vitamin D_3 on the adaptive immune system not yet fully understood. Definite effects of supplementing patients with vitamin D_3 have not yet been shown, but some studies indicate that serum concentrations of vitamin D_3 may affect disease severity[19]. However, this field is quickly developing, and is being investigated for possible future prospects, for instance in preventing MS[23].

Another risk factor with strong association to MS is Epstein Barr virus (EBV) infection[24,25]. A major finding was that individuals who were seronegative for EBV had very low, almost no risk of acquiring MS when compared to seropositive individuals[24]. However, those patients who at some point infected with EBV are not necessarily at risk of developing MS[6]. Further, there was an increased risk of MS if a history of infectious mononucleosis and a temporal increase of EBV antibodies serum titers were present[26], and that MS patients were more often infected with EBV at later ages when compared to controls[27]. It has been hypothesized that EBV may mimic myelin basic protein (MBP) pathogenic antigens by presentation on HLA-DRB1*1501, hence, providing links to both environmental and genetic risk factors[28]. Although the association with MS is well investigated, the role of EBV in its pathology remains uncertain. However, EBV infection and mononucleosis as a priming or initiating factors for developing MS are seemingly likely[24]. Finally, many other factors have shown association with increased MS risk but are in need of further research to be conclusive. These include cigarette smoking, a diet rich in saturated but low in polyunsaturated fats, sex hormones, and socioeconomic status, among others[18,29]. Viruses other than EBV have also been implicated in the etiology of MS[30].

CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS

Natural history

Patients with MS show a wide variety of symptoms caused by lesions in the CNS affecting motor, sensory, visual or even autonomic functions. Lesions appear mainly in the white matter, but also appear in the grey matter. Hence, symptoms show great heterogeneity in both inter- and intra-individually ranging from slight tingling in the fingers to extreme fatigue or complete monocular loss of sight, depending on the lesion(s) localization[4]. Com-

monly, the patients present with a clinically isolated syndrome (CIS), followed by serial sub-acute relapses with varying time intervals. The number of annual relapses and time intervals between them varies among patients, but more than 1.5 relapses/year is a rare occasion[4]. Not all patients have subsequent disease activity after a single CIS, but risk of another episode is increased if white matter lesions are detected by MRI[31]. Between relapses the patients revert spontaneously to normal or near normal neurological function. This clinical subtype of MS is referred to as RR MS, and most patients are present with this form of MS[30]. The clinical course may later convert to a more progressive stage in about 65% of the patients, with fewer or no relapse activity and increasing irreversible disability. Patients have a mean age of about 40 years when they enter this stage, referred to as secondary progressive (SP) MS[32,33]. A minority of patients (about 10%-15%) may present with progressive disability and no relapsing activity, this is called primary progressive (PP) MS[34]. This subtype usually has a later onset than RRMS, at a mean age of around 40 years[33].

Patients with MS experience decades of disease and eventual progression. Due to many complications which occur alongside increased disability, the average life expectancy is reduced by about 5-10 years, and has a median time of 30 years between onset and death[35]. It remains to be seen whether current or future therapeutic methods may extend the time until irreversible disability occurs.

ROLE OF IMMUNE CELLS IN MS

The blood brain barrier

An important finding in MS lesion is the disruption of the blood brain barrier (BBB), and hence a basic understanding of this barrier is essential to understand the pathogenesis of the disease[36]. The BBB is a functional and anatomical barrier separating the blood from neurons in the CNS. It consists of both the vascular wall, CNS astrocytes covering these with glia limitans, and the perivascular space in between[37]. The BBB has several important functions vital for the brain to function properly, including maintenance of proper ionic concentrations through dynamic regulation. The BBB may be viewed as a concept rather than an actual barrier. Even though the word barrier has a certain static ring to it, the BBB is rather dynamic allowing for instance immunological surveillance[38,39]. Lesions occur when leukocytes migrate into the brain and inflammation ensues. This is a two-step process, involving an initial migration across post-capillary venules into perivascular space, and further migration through the glia limitans into the brain parenchyma[37]. The perivascular space allows normal immunosurveillance by monocytes, as this space also serves as the brains' lymphatic drainage[37]. There are at least two additional routes for leukocytes to enter the CNS, as shown by accumulation of immune cells at these sites in animal models, which include the blood-cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) barrier in the choroid plexus, and through meningeal arteries[39].

Role of T cells

The role of T cells has always been considered central in MS pathogenesis, much due to the experimental animal model EAE, but also due to the strong genetic association with HLA class Ⅱ genes[5]. EAE is a widely used animal model for MS, and is induced by immunizing mice or other rodents with myelin peptides, or by adoptively transferring myelin-reactive T-cells[6]. Hence, they cause a T cell mediated acute autoimmune reaction against myelin in the rodents CNS, with signs and symptoms that are similar to those seen in MS. The cellular pathogenesis of MS is however, more complicated than this[40]. For a long time auto-reactive $CD4^+$ T cells secreting interferon-gamma (IFN-γ), were thought to be the main mediators of the inflammation causing MS lesions[4]. Further research suggests numerous other cell types and cell subsets are also involved, with key roles assigned to T helper 17 (Th17) cells[41]. These T cells secrete the pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-17, IL-6 and are regulated by IL-23[42,43]. It is commonly believed that disease occurs when these inflammatory cells and/or other cell types become deregulated and a transition from physiological surveillance to a pathological immune response occurs[4,30].

Since EAE is considered a model of acute inflammation, it has been used to explore what cells are important for this process. It was shown in mice with EAE that $CD4^+$ Th17 cells are necessary to develop EAE[44]. Studies of lesions from MS patients confirmed an overwhelming presence of $CD4^+$ cells secreting IL-17 in active lesions. However, in MS lesions both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells express IL-17[45]. Chemokine receptor CCR6 expressed on Th17 cells facilitates transport through the choroid plexus into the CSF and perivascular space by interacting with CCL20/MIP-3α expressed on endothelium[46]. Th17 cells may also produce GM-CSF promoted by resident antigen presenting cells (APCs) secreting IL-23, which then initiates a positive feedback loop as the same APCs are stimulated by GM-CSF[30,47,48]. Th17 cells may further increase permeability of the BBB by disrupting the endothelial tight junctions due to the secretion of IL-17 and IL-22, and through interactions with endothelium allowing further attraction of $CD4^+$ subsets as well as other immune cells. Consequently, initiating pathological cascade of inflammation, perivascular infiltrates and damage to neurons and glia cells[30,45]. One identified damaging molecule is Granzyme B secreted by the same Th17 cells[49]. However, to gain access into the parenchyma, the cells must traverse the glia limitans. This is thought to be mediated by perivascular APCs and macrophages secreting matrix metalloproteinases (MMP) 2 and MMP-9 which are gelatinases able to cleave dystroglycan, a transmembrane receptor anchoring astrocytes end feet to the parenchymal basement membrane. When mice were knocked down for MMP-2 and MMP-9, they became resistant to EAE as T-cells became trapped in perivascular space[50]. In summary, this cascade may be viewed as a stepwise model, with an initial attraction and migration of Th17 cells into the CSF and perivascular spaces, and later increased permeability of the BBB al-

Table 1 Chemokines receptor expression on T cells and T cell clones isolated from MS patient

Receptor	Main role	Ligands	$CD4^+$ subsets			PBL-74		PBL-78		CSF-25		CSF-26	
			Th1	Th2	Naive	Unact	Act	Unact	Act	Unact	Act	Unact	Act
CXC family													
CXCR1	I	CXCL6, CXCL7, CXCL8											
CXCR2	I	CXCL1, CXCL2, CXCL3, CXCL5, CXCL6, CXCL7, CXCL8											
CXCR3	I	CXCL9, CXCL10, CXCL11	H			H	M	H	M	H	M	H	L
CXCR4	C	CXCL12			H								
CXCR5	C	CXCL13		M									
CXCR6	I	CXCL16											
CXCR7	D	CXCL11, CXCL12											
CC family													
CCR1	I	CCL3, CCL5, CCL7, CCL8, CCL15, CCL16, CCL23	M										
CCR2	I	CCL2, CCL7, CCL8, CCL13, CCL16	H	H									
CCR3	I	CCL5 ,CCL7, CCL11, CCL13, CCL15, CCL24, CCL26, CCL28		H									
CCR4	D	CCL17, CCL22		H		H	H	H	M	H	H	L	
CCR5	I	CCL3, CCL4, CCL5, CCL8, CCL11, CCL14, CCL16	H			H	M	L		H	M		
CCR6	D	CCL20				M		M		L			
CCR7	C	CCL19, CCL21			H								
CCR8	I	CCL1, CCL16		H									
CCR9	D	CCL25,											
CCR10	I	CCL27, CCL28						L	L				
Other													
XCR1	I	XCL1, XCL2											
CX3CR1	D	CX3CL1											

Data adapted from Høglund *et al*[53], Maghazachi[90], Zlotnik *et al*[117] and Sallusto et al[118] . I: Inflammatory; C: Constitutive; D: Dual activities; Unact: Unactivated; Act: Activated; PBL: Peripheral blood lymphocytes; CSF: Cerebrospinal fluid. H: High expression; M: Medium expression; L: Low expression.

lowing additional inflammatory cells access, and later a complete disruption of the BBB with damage to the CNS occurs, resulting in active lesions and potential clinical exacerbation of the disease[25,30].

Although our understanding of how inflammation may be initiated has increased with the advent of the Th17 hypothesis, much remains to be discovered of how T cells and other cell types are recruited into the CNS during inflammation. It is known that chemokines are important for recruiting these cells across the BBB. Chemokines are classified into subfamilies, consisting of CXC, CC, C and CX3C. While some are constitutively expressed, others are up-regulated during inflammation[51]. In MS lesions, chemokines expressed on post-capillary venule endothelial walls and bind chemokine receptors expressed on T cells, allowing extravasation. Chemokine concentration gradients in tissues allow the cells to be further guided towards the sites of inflammation[52].

We explored the role of chemokine receptors expression, which include CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR4, CCR5, CCR6, CCR7, CCR9, CCR10, CXCR1, CXCR3, CXCR4, CXCR5 and CXCR6 on four T cell clones isolated from the blood or CSF of MS patient who was treated with the drug glatiramer acetate (GA). We observed that only four chemokine receptors warranted further study. These were CCR4, CCR5, CCR6 and CXCR3[53]. The fact that all four clones from both peripheral blood and CSF expressed similar patterns of chemokine receptors could be due to migration of the same clones from blood into the CSF, plausibly using CCR5 or CCR6 for entry (Table 1). When these cells were activated, all chemokine receptors expression with the exception of CCR4 was markedly reduced. The migration pattern corresponded well with the expression of receptors observed, with reduced migration observed when receptors were reduced or no longer expressed. Similarly after activation, migration towards chemokines was less robust. These observations support the hypothesis of diminished effects of GA due to inflammation and premature activation of GA-reactive cells. As migration into the CNS is a necessary step of the bystander suppression hypothesis[24], knowledge of how these cells migrate into the CNS is important in order to possibly enhance the effectiveness of this drug.

These results could in part explain why aggressive immunosuppression followed by maintenance therapy is very effective. Such combination therapy is relatively new to MS treatment, but has been used in other autoimmune diseases. Inspired by this, researchers applied combination therapies which resulted in a better outcome for RRMS patients. Several combinations have been tested, some show more promise than others. It was for instance described how patients treated with a short induction of mitoxantrone followed by longer term GA therapy showed a reduction in new relapses compared to GA alone, as well promising results regarding gadolinium enhanced lesion load[54-57]. This suggests possible synergistic effects among these drugs. Mitoxantrone is a powerful immunosuppres-

sive drug that is approved for treatment of RRMS and secondary progressive MS (SPMS) in the United States. By suppressing inflammation induced by autoreactive T cells such as Th17 and/or Th1, this drug may pave the way for GA-reactive cell migration into the CNS upon reconstitution of the immune system. This way, the cells may mediate their bystander suppression without being impeded by an inflammatory environment. However, while initial studies of this showed important clinical efficacy, further studies are warranted in order to determine whether this treatment regimen is better suited than newer therapies such as alemtuzumab and other future immunomodulators.

The presence of inflammatory T cells in perivascular space and parenchyma triggers recruitment of more T cells, as well as B cells, dendritic cells, microglia and natural killer (NK) cells. The cytokines secreted may by themselves cause damage to the surrounding tissues[58]. Complement depositions, opsonization and local activation of microglia and macrophages causing demyelination[59], and neuronal cell death are few examples of the effects of cytokines[60]. Axonal damage is also present[61,62], and the degree of this was associated with abundance of microglia and $CD8^+$ T cells[63]. Clonally expanded $CD8^+$ T cells are present usually at the lesion edge, as well as in the perivascular infiltrates, indicating a specific antigen response and also possibly responsible for damages to neurons through cell dependent cytotoxicity[64-67]. It was also demonstrated that clonal γδ T cells are present in MS lesions[68]. When the lesion acute phase is over, removal of cellular debris starts, and simultaneously remyelination occurs within the MS plaque. A minority of the patients (about 20%) show more abundant remyelination[69].

In addition, a study showed that MS patients had a significant loss of effector function in the regulatory $CD4^+CD25^+$ subset of T cells (Treg), when compared to healthy individuals[70]. Another study showed reduced frequency of this subset in general as well as reduced expression of transcription factor FOXP3[71]. Although circulating numbers may be the same in patients and healthy individuals, the suppressive potential of Treg cells in MS patients was reduced[72]. Interestingly, these T cells were also able to produce IL-17 when stimulated with APCs in the presence of IL-2 and IL-15[73], but retained their suppressive abilities dependent on the surrounding cytokine environment[74]. Although this regulatory subset may inhibit auto reactive T cells, it is not certain where such inhibition may occur[41].

Finally, it may be that MS is not initially caused by the adaptive immune system at all, but rather as a response to an intrinsic CNS neurodegeneration, indicating that inflammation may follow initial axonal degeneration caused by a currently unknown factor. This is supported by the fact that progression of disease is mainly caused by the amount of lost neurons[30]. In addition, there seems to be a correlation between age at onset than initial clinical course on the disease progression[33].

Role of B cells

The most obvious argument for B cells being involved in MS pathogenesis is the presence of immunoglobulins such as immunoglobulin G1 in the CSF, as detected by isoelectric focusing or gel electrophoresis in as many as 95% of diagnosed patients. Although myelin reactive antibodies have been detected, their relevance is not certain[25], much like the role of antigens. In MS lesions, there have been findings of both immunoglobulin and complement which may suggest a pathogenic role[75,76]. Additionally, B lymphoid follicles, T cells and APCs were identified in the meninges of patients at later stages of MS (SPMS but not PPMS)[76,77]. B cells may contribute to the pathology through antigen presentation, cell interactions or production of immunoglobulins from plasma cells, although B cell activity may represent a response to the autoimmune reaction, rather than to a primary inducer[25].

In EAE, the antigens responsible for the disease have been described. By immunizing the animal with myelin proteins such as MBP, proteolipid protein or myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein (MOG), disease can be induced[78]. In humans, such common antigens remain unknown in spite of several attempts to identify them[25,30]. Several candidate antigens are being or have been investigated, but no single candidate has been targeted as the one responsible. Myelin or peptides derived from myelin were thought to be good candidates due to the similarity between EAE and MS, but the responses to these antigens have proven to be unspecific and may suggest that several antigens are involved and/or an extensive epitope spreading occurring after initiation of the disease[30,41,79]. One recently suggested antigen is αβ-crystallin, which contrary to previous candidates is not present in human myelin, but rather is detected in early active MS lesions, and patients have antibodies against it in their CSF[6]. When the gene encoding αβ-crystallin was knocked down in mice, a more intense inflammatory EAE with higher cytokine load occurred[80]. This suggests a protective role that may be disrupted by a pathogenic immune response. Another candidate not directly associated with myelin is neurofascin, expressed on neuronal axons. As antibodies have been detected in patients with MS, this may contribute to axonal damage[81].

Role of NK cells

NK cells are large granular lymphocytes that possess the ability to spontaneously lyse target cells without a prior sensitization[82]. NK cells also have immunoregulatory features, including secretion of cytokines, chemokines and cell to cell contact[83,84]. Functionally, these cells are important in immune responses to viral infections as well as controlling tumor growths[85,86]. The activities of these cells are regulated by activating and inhibitory receptors, which by intracellular integration of challenges and inhibitions determine the cell course of action[87]. NK cells recognize and are activated by cells that are in distress by detecting stress induced ligands on target cells through natural cytotoxicity receptors, such as NKp30, NKp44, or NKp46, and the C-type lectin receptor NKG2D, among others[87,88]. In healthy cells however, activating

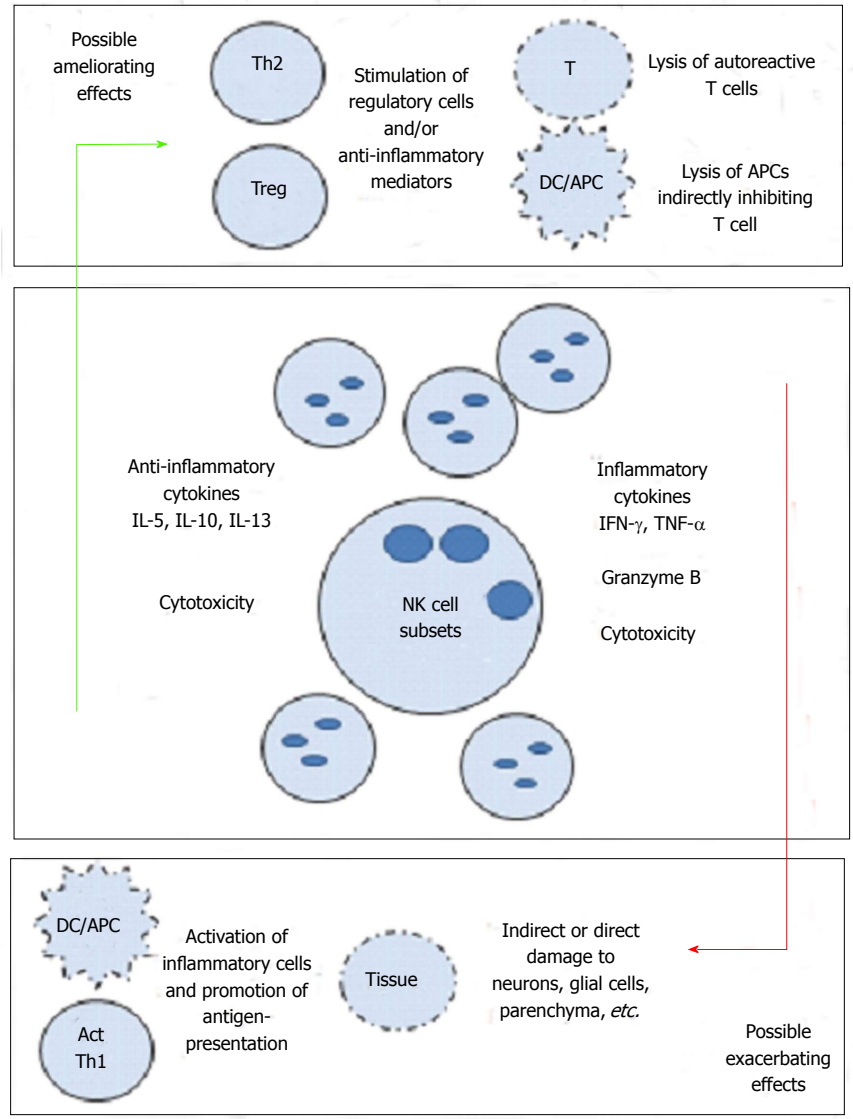


Figure 1 Natural killer cells influence multiple sclerosis pathogenesis in both protective and exacerbating ways. Lysis of either auto-reactive cells or antigen presenting cells (APCs) may protect the central nervous system (CNS) from damage. Stimulation of protective Th2 or Treg cells may also encourage an anti-inflammatory environment. On the other hand, stimulation of APCs or auto-reactive cells may have opposite effects. IL: Interleukin; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor; IFN: Interferon; NK: Natural killer.

factors are held in equilibrium by inhibiting signals. NK cells express numerous receptors that inhibit activation, including members of the killer-cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) family that interact with HLA-I molecules and CD94-NKG2A that interact with HLA-E. In the absence of these "self" ligands, NK cells are activated and consequently, kill target cells[89].

In human blood, NK cells constitute about 2% to 18% of the total circulating lymphocytes[90,91], and can be classified into subsets based on expression of surface receptors. $CD16^{+}CD56^{-}$ constitute about 85%-90% of circulating NK cells, are highly cytotoxic but produce little cytokines, while $CD16^{-}CD56^{+}$ cells are less cytotoxic but effective cytokine producers[92]. NK cells may also be classified based on their cytokine expression. Similar to Th1/Th2 subsets, these cells were divided into NK1 expressing IFN-γ, or NK2 expressing IL-5 and IL-13[93]. Further research divided these NK cells into even smaller subsets, recognized as NK22 secreting IL-22 and found in lymphoid tissues of the gastrointestinal tract[94], or NK17/NK1 cells secreting IL-17 and IFN-γ when stimulated with IL-2[95].

The role of NK cells in autoimmune diseases is being investigated, and is highly debated as both positive and negative associations have been observed[96-99]. In the EAE model, depletion of NK cells resulted in a severe relapsing EAE, and more pronounced CNS pathology[100-103]. This suggests protective effects for NK cells, especially since the depletion was associated with increased $CD4^{+}$ T cell activity and hence, may be associated with direct killing of these cells[88,104]. Also in EAE, mice deficient in the chemokine receptor CX_3CR1 had more severe EAE. This receptor is necessary for the recruitment of NK cells into the CNS, providing evidence showing that NK cell infiltrating into the CNS represents an important event in ameliorating and controlling the disease[105]. In the same mice there were increased responses from Th17 cells locally in CNS, suggesting

a plausible role for NK cells in curbing these cells[106]. Conflicting with these results, it was found that depletion of NK cells in MOG-induced EAE actually ameliorated the disease[107]. Additionally, by stimulating NK cells to produce IFN-γ, these cells may also cause inflammation in part by stimulating Th1 cell response[108,109]. These findings represent detrimental effects of NK cells eliciting inflammatory lesions and exacerbating the inflammatory response. Much of the confusion regarding conflicting findings may be attributed to failure to recognize different effects by different subsets, which should encourage further investigation into this field.

The functional activity of NK cells is variable and is generally lower in MS patients than in healthy individuals[110]. Periods of reduced NK cell numbers in the blood was associated with a higher relapse tendency after. The same study also found a correlation between high mean NK cell activity and total lesion load determined by MRI[111]. As reduced numbers of NK cells were thought to be mediated by migration into tissues including the CNS, this could indicate a pathological role for NK cells. However, it could also be viewed as a risk factor for new attacks due to reduced activity of NK cells. In a more recent study, researchers found a reduced number of $CD8^{low}CD56^{+}CD3^{-}CD4^{-}$ cells in untreated patients with CIS, when compared to healthy controls[112].

Along these associations, there have been speculations as to how exactly NK cells mediate their effects, be it positive or negative. One suggested pathway was interactions between NK cells and dendritic cells[97,101]. The cognate and non-cognate interactions among NK cells and DCs have been previously described. Activated NK cells are also able to kill immature (i) DCs, but mature (m) DCs are spared. How and where these cells interact are not clear, but it was hypothesized that such interactions may occur in inflamed tissues. Our work on the effects of GA on NK cells in MS patients and healthy individuals shows that GA influences this cross-talk between DCs and NK cells. Consequently, we hypothesized that this may impede antigen presentation to auto reactive T cells (Th17 or Th1), and may further reduce inflammation. We described that NK cells stimulated *in vitro* with GA became more cytotoxic towards autologous and allogeneic iDCs and mDCs[113]. Furthermore, we described how NK cells from EAE mice treated with GA were more cytotoxic than NK cells isolated from EAE mice treated with vehicle alone, which was associated with ameliorating the disease[114]. While these findings support a mechanism of action for GA on NK cells, it had to be further addressed in humans with in vivo exposure to the drug. Consequently, we examined the activities of NK cells and DCs in MS patients receiving the drug GA for one year. In this study, we compared the cytotoxicity levels before treatment with those observed after treatment. We demonstrated that NK cells isolated from GA-dosed MS patients had significantly increased cytotoxicity against K562 tumor cells. Trends of significantly increased cytotoxicity were also observed against both iDC and mDC in the same patients[115]. In summary, it seems that GA increases the cytotoxic activity of NK cells when compared to pretreatment levels. The increased cytotoxicity correlated well with the elevated expression of activating NK cells cytotoxicity receptors. Figure 1 represents our current knowledge regarding the role that NK cells might play in MS.

CONCLUSION

The evidence for a complex immunopathology has become ever clearer with the reveal of numerous genes associated with the immune system carrying risk of developing MS, novel cell subsets being discovered and shown to possibly be related to the pathogenesis, and knowledge of how disease modifying therapies (DMT) target several immune cells rather than single subsets. All of these call for continuous bedside-to-bench research into how the newer DMTs enhance, inhibit or modulate the immune system of patients resulting in a better clinical course than without such treatment. The introduction of the new oral therapeutics teriflunomide (Aubagio®), fingolimod (Gilenya®) and dimethyl fumarate (Tecfidera®), all with incomplete understandings of their mechanisms of action on the immune system, will be particularly interesting to follow in this regard.

So far, research into how immune cells act in MS patients, EAE models and *in vitro* have primarily focused on single subsets or categorically on either adaptive- or innate immune cells. Recent knowledge of how NK cells may belong in a grey area between these traditional groupings challenges this concept[116]. For instance, while our own research focused on the interactions between NK and dendritic cells, similar interactions between NK and B cells would be of interest, as B cells also have antigen presenting abilities. NK cells also have the ability to modify or lyse T cells, and hence investigations into how these cells interact in MS patients or in the EAE model could improve our understanding of the regulation or dysregulation the immune systems of MS patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Charcot J**. Histologie de la sclerose en plaques. *Gazette des hopitaux* 1868; **41**: 554-555
2 **Compston A**. The 150th anniversary of the first depiction of the lesions of multiple sclerosis. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1988; **51**: 1249-1252 [PMID: 3066846 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.51.10.1249]
3 **Holmøy T**, Hestvik AL, Vartdal F. Management of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy associated with natalizumab--possibilities and responsibility. *Eur J Neurol* 2006; **13**: e2 [PMID: 16879280 DOI: 10.1159/000091431]
4 **Compston A**, Coles A. Multiple sclerosis. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 1502-1517 [PMID: 18970977 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61620-7]
5 **Gourraud PA**, Harbo HF, Hauser SL, Baranzini SE. The genetics of multiple sclerosis: an up-to-date review. *Immunol Rev* 2012; **248**: 87-103 [PMID: 22725956 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2012.01134]
6 **Holmøy T**, Hestvik AL. Multiple sclerosis: immunopathogenesis and controversies in defining the cause. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2008; **21**: 271-278 [PMID: 18448972 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0b013e3282f88b48]
7 **Robertson NP**, Clayton D, Fraser M, Deans J, Compston DA.

Clinical concordance in sibling pairs with multiple sclerosis. *Neurology* 1996; **47**: 347-352 [PMID: 8757003 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.47.2.347]

8 **Carton H**, Vlietinck R, Debruyne J, De Keyser J, D'Hooghe MB, Loos R, Medaer R, Truyen L, Yee IM, Sadovnick AD. Risks of multiple sclerosis in relatives of patients in Flanders, Belgium. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1997; **62**: 329-333 [PMID: 9120443 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.62.4.329]

9 **Sadovnick AD**, Yee IM, Ebers GC, Risch NJ. Effect of age at onset and parental disease status on sibling risks for MS. *Neurology* 1998; **50**: 719-723 [PMID: 9521263 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.38.6.990]

10 **Willer CJ**, Dyment DA, Risch NJ, Sadovnick AD, Ebers GC. Twin concordance and sibling recurrence rates in multiple sclerosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 12877-12882 [PMID: 14569025 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1932604100]

11 **Mumford CJ**, Wood NW, Kellar-Wood H, Thorpe JW, Miller DH, Compston DA. The British Isles survey of multiple sclerosis in twins. *Neurology* 1994; **44**: 11-15 [PMID: 8290043 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.44.1.11]

12 **Svejgaard A**. The immunogenetics of multiple sclerosis. *Immunogenetics* 2008; **60**: 275-286 [PMID: 18461312 DOI: 10.1007/s00251-008-0295-1]

13 **Sawcer S**, Hellenthal G, Pirinen M, Spencer CC, Patsopoulos NA, Moutsianas L, Dilthey A, Su Z, Freeman C, Hunt SE, Edkins S, Gray E, Booth DR, Potter SC, Goris A, Band G, Oturai AB, Strange A, Saarela J, Bellenguez C, Fontaine B, Gillman M, Hemmer B, Gwilliam R, Zipp F, Jayakumar A, Martin R, Leslie S, Hawkins S, Giannoulatou E, D'alfonso S, Blackburn H, Martinelli Boneschi F, Liddle J, Harbo HF, Perez ML, Spurkland A, Waller MJ, Mycko MP, Ricketts M, Comabella M, Hammond N, Kockum I, McCann OT, Ban M, Whittaker P, Kemppinen A, Weston P, Hawkins C, Widaa S, Zajicek J, Dronov S, Robertson N, Bumpstead SJ, Barcellos LF, Ravindrarajah R, Abraham R, Alfredsson L, Ardlie K, Aubin C, Baker A, Baker K, Baranzini SE, Bergamaschi L, Bergamaschi R, Bernstein A, Berthele A, Boggild M, Bradfield JP, Brassat D, Broadley SA, Buck D, Butzkueven H, Capra R, Carroll WM, Cavalla P, Celius EG, Cepok S, Chiavacci R, Clerget-Darpoux F, Clysters K, Comi G, Cossburn M, Cournu-Rebeix I, Cox MB, Cozen W, Cree BA, Cross AH, Cusi D, Daly MJ, Davis E, de Bakker PI, Debouverie M, D'hooghe MB, Dixon K, Dobosi R, Dubois B, Ellinghaus D, Elovaara I, Esposito F, Fontenille C, Foote S, Franke A, Galimberti D, Ghezzi A, Glessner J, Gomez R, Gout O, Graham C, Grant SF, Guerini FR, Hakonarson H, Hall P, Hamsten A, Hartung HP, Heard RN, Heath S, Hobart J, Hoshi M, Infante-Duarte C, Ingram G, Ingram W, Islam T, Jagodic M, Kabesch M, Kermode AG, Kilpatrick TJ, Kim C, Klopp N, Koivisto K, Larsson M, Lathrop M, Lechner-Scott JS, Leone MA, Leppä V, Liljedahl U, Bomfim IL, Lincoln RR, Link J, Liu J, Lorentzen AR, Lupoli S, Macciardi F, Mack T, Marriott M, Martinelli V, Mason D, McCauley JL, Mentch F, Mero IL, Mihalova T, Montalban X, Mottershead J, Myhr KM, Naldi P, Ollier W, Page A, Palotie A, Pelletier J, Piccio L, Pickersgill T, Piehl F, Pobywajlo S, Quach HL, Ramsay PP, Reunanen M, Reynolds R, Rioux JD, Rodegher M, Roesner S, Rubio JP, Rückert IM, Salvetti M, Salvi E, Santaniello A, Schaefer CA, Schreiber S, Schulze C, Scott RJ, Sellebjerg F, Selmaj KW, Sexton D, Shen L, Simms-Acuna B, Skidmore S, Sleiman PM, Smestad C, Sørensen PS, Søndergaard HB, Stankovich J, Strange RC, Sulonen AM, Sundqvist E, Syvänen AC, Taddeo F, Taylor B, Blackwell JM, Tienari P, Bramon E, Tourbah A, Brown MA, Tronczynska E, Casas JP, Tubridy N, Corvin A, Vickery J, Jankowski J, Villoslada P, Markus HS, Wang K, Mathew CG, Wason J, Palmer CN, Wichmann HE, Plomin R, Willoughby E, Rautanen A, Winkelmann J, Wittig M, Trembath RC, Yaouanq J, Viswanathan AC, Zhang H, Wood NW, Zuvich R, Deloukas P, Langford C, Duncanson A, Oksenberg JR, Pericak-Vance MA, Haines JL, Olsson T, Hillert J, Ivinson AJ, De Jager PL, Peltonen L, Stewart GJ, Hafler DA, Hauser SL, McVean G, Donnelly P, Compston A. Genetic risk and a primary role for cell-mediated immune mechanisms in multiple sclerosis. *Nature* 2011; **476**: 214-219 [PMID: 21833088 DOI: 10.1038/nature10251]

14 **Sawcer S**. Bayes factors in complex genetics. *Eur J Hum Genet* 2010; **18**: 746-750 [PMID: 20179745 DOI: 10.1038/ejhg]

15 **Hafler DA**, Compston A, Sawcer S, Lander ES, Daly MJ, De Jager PL, de Bakker PI, Gabriel SB, Mirel DB, Ivinson AJ, Pericak-Vance MA, Gregory SG, Rioux JD, McCauley JL, Haines JL, Barcellos LF, Cree B, Oksenberg JR, Hauser SL. Risk alleles for multiple sclerosis identified by a genomewide study. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 851-862 [PMID: 17660530 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa073493]

16 **Simpson S**, Blizzard L, Otahal P, Van der Mei I, Taylor B. Latitude is significantly associated with the prevalence of multiple sclerosis: a meta-analysis. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2011; **82**: 1132-1141 [PMID: 21478203 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp]

17 **Grytten N**, Torkildsen Ø, Aarseth JH, Benjaminsen E, Celius EG, Dahl OP, Holmøy T, Løken-Amsrud K, Midgard R, Myhr KM, Risberg G, Vatne A, Kampman MT. Month of birth as a latitude-dependent risk factor for multiple sclerosis in Norway. *Mult Scler* 2013; **19**: 1028-1034 [PMID: 23257620 DOI: 10.1177/1352458512471094]

18 **Ascherio A**, Munger KL. Environmental risk factors for multiple sclerosis. Part II: Noninfectious factors. *Ann Neurol* 2007; **61**: 504-513 [PMID: 17492755 DOI: 10.1002/ana.21117]

19 **Ascherio A**, Munger KL, Simon KC. Vitamin D and multiple sclerosis. *Lancet Neurol* 2010; **9**: 599-612 [PMID: 20494325 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(10)70086-7]

20 **Brustad M**, Sandanger T, Aksnes L, Lund E. Vitamin D status in a rural population of northern Norway with high fish liver consumption. *Public Health Nutr* 2004; **7**: 783-789 [PMID: 15369617 DOI: 10.1079/PHN2004605]

21 **Lemire JM**, Archer DC. 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3 prevents the in vivo induction of murine experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Clin Invest* 1991; **87**: 1103-1107 [PMID: 1705564 DOI: 10.1172/JCI115072]

22 **Cantorna MT**, Hayes CE, DeLuca HF. 1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D3 reversibly blocks the progression of relapsing encephalomyelitis, a model of multiple sclerosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 7861-7864 [PMID: 8755567 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.15.7861]

23 **Munger KL**, Levin LI, Hollis BW, Howard NS, Ascherio A. Serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels and risk of multiple sclerosis. *JAMA* 2006; **296**: 2832-2838 [PMID: 17179460 DOI: 10.1001/jama.296.23.2832]

24 **Ascherio A**, Munger KL. Environmental risk factors for multiple sclerosis. Part I: the role of infection. *Ann Neurol* 2007; **61**: 288-299 [PMID: 17444504]

25 **Hestvik AL**. The double-edged sword of autoimmunity: lessons from multiple sclerosis. *Toxins* (Basel) 2010; **2**: 856-877 [PMID: 22069614 DOI: 10.3390/toxins2040856]

26 **Ascherio A**, Munger KL, Lennette ET, Spiegelman D, Hernán MA, Olek MJ, Hankinson SE, Hunter DJ. Epstein-Barr virus antibodies and risk of multiple sclerosis: a prospective study. *JAMA* 2001; **286**: 3083-3088 [PMID: 11754673 DOI: 10.1001/jama.286.24.3083]

27 **Martyn CN**, Cruddas M, Compston DA. Symptomatic Epstein-Barr virus infection and multiple sclerosis. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1993; **56**: 167-168 [PMID: 8382268 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.56.2.167]

28 **Lang HL**, Jacobsen H, Ikemizu S, Andersson C, Harlos K, Madsen L, Hjorth P, Sondergaard L, Svejgaard A, Wucherpfennig K, Stuart DI, Bell JI, Jones EY, Fugger L. A functional and structural basis for TCR cross-reactivity in multiple sclerosis. *Nat Immunol* 2002; **3**: 940-943 [PMID: 12244309 DOI: 10.1038/ni835]

29 **Marrie RA**. Environmental risk factors in multiple sclerosis aetiology. *Lancet Neurol* 2004; **3**: 709-718 [PMID: 15556803

DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(04)00933-0]
30 **Dolei A**, Garson JA, Arru G, Clerici M, Germi R, Marche PN, Perron H. Multiple sclerosis-associated retrovirus and related human endogenous retrovirus-W in patients with multiple sclerosis. *J Neuroimmunol* 2014; **266**: 87-88 [PMID: 24355750 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2013.11.009]
31 **Fisniku LK**, Brex PA, Altmann DR, Miszkiel KA, Benton CE, Lanyon R, Thompson AJ, Miller DH. Disability and T2 MRI lesions: a 20-year follow-up of patients with relapse onset of multiple sclerosis. *Brain* 2008; **131**: 808-817 [PMID: 18234696 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awm329]
32 **Weinshenker BG**. The natural history of multiple sclerosis: update 1998. *Semin Neurol* 1998; **18**: 301-307 [PMID: 9817534 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040881]
33 **Confavreux C**, Vukusic S. Age at disability milestones in multiple sclerosis. *Brain* 2006; **129**: 595-605 [PMID: 16415309 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awh714]
34 **Miller DH**, Leary SM. Primary-progressive multiple sclerosis. *Lancet Neurol* 2007; **6**: 903-912 [PMID: 17884680 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(07)70243-0]
35 **Brønnum-Hansen H**, Koch-Henriksen N, Stenager E. Trends in survival and cause of death in Danish patients with multiple sclerosis. *Brain* 2004; **127**: 844-850 [PMID: 14960501 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awh104]
36 **Engelhardt B**. The blood-central nervous system barriers actively control immune cell entry into the central nervous system. *Curr Pharm Des* 2008; **14**: 1555-1565 [PMID: 18673197 DOI: 10.2174/138161208784705432]
37 **Bechmann I**, Galea I, Perry VH. What is the blood-brain barrier (not)? *Trends Immunol* 2007; **28**: 5-11 [PMID: 17140851 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2006.11.007]
38 **Kivisäkk P**, Mahad DJ, Callahan MK, Trebst C, Tucky B, Wei T, Wu L, Baekkevold ES, Lassmann H, Staugaitis SM, Campbell JJ, Ransohoff RM. Human cerebrospinal fluid central memory CD4+ T cells: evidence for trafficking through choroid plexus and meninges via P-selectin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8389-8394 [PMID: 12829791 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1433000100]
39 **Ransohoff RM**, Kivisäkk P, Kidd G. Three or more routes for leukocyte migration into the central nervous system. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2003; **3**: 569-581 [PMID: 12876559 DOI: 10.1038/nri1130]
40 **Steinman L**. Multiple sclerosis: a two-stage disease. *Nat Immunol* 2001; **2**: 762-764 [PMID: 11526378 DOI: 10.1038/ni0901-762]
41 **McFarland HF**, Martin R. Multiple sclerosis: a complicated picture of autoimmunity. *Nat Immunol* 2007; **8**: 913-919 [PMID: 17712344 DOI: 10.1038/ni1507]
42 **Langrish CL**, Chen Y, Blumenschein WM, Mattson J, Basham B, Sedgwick JD, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Cua DJ. IL-23 drives a pathogenic T cell population that induces autoimmune inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 233-240 [PMID: 15657292 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20041257]
43 **Steinman L**. A brief history of T(H)17, the first major revision in the T(H)1/T(H)2 hypothesis of T cell-mediated tissue damage. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 139-145 [PMID: 17290272 DOI: 10.1038/nm0307-385a]
44 **Komiyama Y**, Nakae S, Matsuki T, Nambu A, Ishigame H, Kakuta S, Sudo K, Iwakura Y. IL-17 plays an important role in the development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 566-573 [PMID: 16785554 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.177.1.566]
45 **Tzartos JS**, Friese MA, Craner MJ, Palace J, Newcombe J, Esiri MM, Fugger L. Interleukin-17 production in central nervous system-infiltrating T cells and glial cells is associated with active disease in multiple sclerosis. *Am J Pathol* 2008; **172**: 146-155 [PMID: 18156204 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2008.070690]
46 **Reboldi A**, Coisne C, Baumjohann D, Benvenuto F, Bottinelli D, Lira S, Uccelli A, Lanzavecchia A, Engelhardt B, Sallusto F. C-C chemokine receptor 6-regulated entry of TH-17 cells into the CNS through the choroid plexus is required for the initiation of EAE. *Nat Immunol* 2009; **10**: 514-523 [PMID: 19305396 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1716]
47 **El-Behi M**, Ciric B, Dai H, Yan Y, Cullimore M, Safavi F, Zhang GX, Dittel BN, Rostami A. The encephalitogenicity of T(H)17 cells is dependent on IL-1- and IL-23-induced production of the cytokine GM-CSF. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 568-575 [PMID: 21516111]
48 **Codarri L**, Gyülvészi G, Tosevski V, Hesske L, Fontana A, Magnenat L, Suter T, Becher B. RORγt drives production of the cytokine GM-CSF in helper T cells, which is essential for the effector phase of autoimmune neuroinflammation. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 560-567 [PMID: 21516112 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2027]
49 **Kebir H**, Kreymborg K, Ifergan I, Dodelet-Devillers A, Cayrol R, Bernard M, Giuliani F, Arbour N, Becher B, Prat A. Human TH17 lymphocytes promote blood-brain barrier disruption and central nervous system inflammation. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 1173-1175 [PMID: 17828272 DOI: 10.1038/nm1651]
50 **Agrawal S**, Anderson P, Durbeej M, van Rooijen N, Ivars F, Opdenakker G, Sorokin LM. Dystroglycan is selectively cleaved at the parenchymal basement membrane at sites of leukocyte extravasation in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 1007-1019 [PMID: 16585265 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20051342]
51 **Bruserud Ø**. The chemokine system in experimental and clinical hematology. Preface. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2010; **341**: v-vi [PMID: 20973160 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-12639-0]
52 **Cheng WJ**, Chen GJ. Chemokines and Chemokine Receptors in Multiple Sclerosis. *Mediat inflamm* 2014; 2014: 659206 [PMID: 24639600 DOI: 10.1155/2014/659206]
53 **Høglund RA**, Hestvik AL, Holmøy T, Maghazachi AA. Expression and functional activity of chemokine receptors in glatiramer acetate-specific T cells isolated from multiple sclerosis patient receiving the drug glatiramer acetate. *Hum Immunol* 2011; **72**: 124-134 [PMID: 20977917 DOI: 10.1016/j.humimm]
54 **Vollmer T**, Panitch H, Bar-Or A, Dunn J, Freedman MS, Gazda SK, Campagnolo D, Deutsch F, Arnold DL. Glatiramer acetate after induction therapy with mitoxantrone in relapsing multiple sclerosis. *Mult Scler* 2008; **14**: 663-670 [PMID: 18424479 DOI: 10.1177/1352458507085759]
55 **Ramtahal J**, Jacob A, Das K, Boggild M. Sequential maintenance treatment with glatiramer acetate after mitoxantrone is safe and can limit exposure to immunosuppression in very active, relapsing remitting multiple sclerosis. *J Neurol* 2006; **253**: 1160-1164 [PMID: 16990994 DOI: 10.1007/s00415-006-0178-z]
56 **Boggild M**. Immunosuppression followed by immunomodulation. *J Neurol Sci* 2009; **277** Suppl 1: S50-S54 [PMID: 19200868 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-510X(09)70014-0]
57 **Arnold DL**, Campagnolo D, Panitch H, Bar-Or A, Dunn J, Freedman MS, Gazda SK, Vollmer T. Glatiramer acetate after mitoxantrone induction improves MRI markers of lesion volume and permanent tissue injury in MS. *J Neurol* 2008; **255**: 1473-1478 [PMID: 18854910 DOI: 10.1007/s00415-008-0911]
58 **Zajicek JP**, Wing M, Scolding NJ, Compston DA. Interactions between oligodendrocytes and microglia. A major role for complement and tumour necrosis factor in oligodendrocyte adherence and killing. *Brain* 1992; **115** (Pt 6): 1611-1631 [PMID: 1486453 DOI: 10.1093/brain/115.6.1611]
59 **Prineas JW**, Graham JS. Multiple sclerosis: capping of surface immunoglobulin G on macrophages engaged in myelin breakdown. *Ann Neurol* 1981; **10**: 149-158 [PMID: 7025748 DOI: 10.1002/ana.410100205]
60 **Breij EC**, Brink BP, Veerhuis R, van den Berg C, Vloet R, Yan R, Dijkstra CD, van der Valk P, Bö L. Homogeneity of active demyelinating lesions in established multiple sclerosis. *Ann Neurol* 2008; **63**: 16-25 [PMID: 18232012 DOI: 10.1002/ana.21311]

61 **Trapp BD**, Peterson J, Ransohoff RM, Rudick R, Mörk S, Bö L. Axonal transection in the lesions of multiple sclerosis. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **338**: 278-285 [PMID: 9445407 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199801293380502]

62 **Ferguson B**, Matyszak MK, Esiri MM, Perry VH. Axonal damage in acute multiple sclerosis lesions. *Brain* 1997; **120** (Pt 3): 393-399 [PMID: 9126051 DOI: 10.1093/brain/120.3.393]

63 **Kuhlmann T**, Lingfeld G, Bitsch A, Schuchardt J, Brück W. Acute axonal damage in multiple sclerosis is most extensive in early disease stages and decreases over time. *Brain* 2002; **125**: 2202-2212 [PMID: 12244078 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awf235]

64 **Traugott U**, Reinherz EL, Raine CS. Multiple sclerosis: distribution of T cell subsets within active chronic lesions. *Science* 1983; **219**: 308-310 [PMID: 6217550 DOI: 10.1126/science.6217550]

65 **Babbe H**, Roers A, Waisman A, Lassmann H, Goebels N, Hohlfeld R, Friese M, Schröder R, Deckert M, Schmidt S, Ravid R, Rajewsky K. Clonal expansions of CD8(+) T cells dominate the T cell infiltrate in active multiple sclerosis lesions as shown by micromanipulation and single cell polymerase chain reaction. *J Exp Med* 2000; **192**: 393-404 [PMID: 10934227 DOI: 10.1084/jem.192.3.393]

66 **Skulina C**, Schmidt S, Dornmair K, Babbe H, Roers A, Rajewsky K, Wekerle H, Hohlfeld R, Goebels N. Multiple sclerosis: brain-infiltrating CD8+ T cells persist as clonal expansions in the cerebrospinal fluid and blood. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 2428-2433 [PMID: 14983026 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0308689100]

67 **Junker A**, Ivanidze J, Malotka J, Eiglmeier I, Lassmann H, Wekerle H, Meinl E, Hohlfeld R, Dornmair K. Multiple sclerosis: T-cell receptor expression in distinct brain regions. *Brain* 2007; **130**: 2789-2799 [PMID: 17890278 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awm214]

68 **Wucherpfennig KW**, Newcombe J, Li H, Keddy C, Cuzner ML, Hafler DA. Gamma delta T-cell receptor repertoire in acute multiple sclerosis lesions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 4588-4592 [PMID: 1374907 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.89.10.4588]

69 **Patrikios P**, Stadelmann C, Kutzelnigg A, Rauschka H, Schmidbauer M, Laursen H, Sorensen PS, Brück W, Lucchinetti C, Lassmann H. Remyelination is extensive in a subset of multiple sclerosis patients. *Brain* 2006; **129**: 3165-3172 [PMID: 16921173 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awl217]

70 **Viglietta V**, Baecher-Allan C, Weiner HL, Hafler DA. Loss of functional suppression by CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in patients with multiple sclerosis. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 971-979 [PMID: 15067033 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20031579]

71 **Venken K**, Hellings N, Thewissen M, Somers V, Hensen K, Rummens JL, Medaer R, Hupperts R, Stinissen P. Compromised CD4+ CD25(high) regulatory T-cell function in patients with relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis is correlated with a reduced frequency of FOXP3-positive cells and reduced FOXP3 expression at the single-cell level. *Immunology* 2008; **123**: 79-89 [PMID: 17897326 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2007.02690.x]

72 **Haas J**, Hug A, Viehöver A, Fritzsching B, Falk CS, Filser A, Vetter T, Milkova L, Korporal M, Fritz B, Storch-Hagenlocher B, Krammer PH, Suri-Payer E, Wildemann B. Reduced suppressive effect of CD4+CD25high regulatory T cells on the T cell immune response against myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein in patients with multiple sclerosis. *Eur J Immunol* 2005; **35**: 3343-3352 [PMID: 16206232 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200526065]

73 **Koenen HJ**, Smeets RL, Vink PM, van Rijssen E, Boots AM, Joosten I. Human CD25highFoxp3pos regulatory T cells differentiate into IL-17-producing cells. *Blood* 2008; **112**: 2340-2352 [PMID: 18617638 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2008-01-133967]

74 **Beriou G**, Costantino CM, Ashley CW, Yang L, Kuchroo VK, Baecher-Allan C, Hafler DA. IL-17-producing human peripheral regulatory T cells retain suppressive function. *Blood* 2009; **113**: 4240-4249 [PMID: 19171879 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2008-10-183251]

75 **Storch MK**, Piddlesden S, Haltia M, Iivanainen M, Morgan P, Lassmann H. Multiple sclerosis: in situ evidence for antibody- and complement-mediated demyelination. *Ann Neurol* 1998; **43**: 465-471 [PMID: 9546327 DOI: 10.1002/ana.410430409]

76 **Magliozzi R**, Howell O, Vora A, Serafini B, Nicholas R, Puopolo M, Reynolds R, Aloisi F. Meningeal B-cell follicles in secondary progressive multiple sclerosis associate with early onset of disease and severe cortical pathology. *Brain* 2007; **130**: 1089-1104 [PMID: 17438020 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awm038]

77 **Serafini B**, Rosicarelli B, Magliozzi R, Stigliano E, Capello E, Mancardi GL, Aloisi F. Dendritic cells in multiple sclerosis lesions: maturation stage, myelin uptake, and interaction with proliferating T cells. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 2006; **65**: 124-141 [PMID: 16462204]

78 **Miller SD**, Karpus WJ, Davidson TS. Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in the mouse. *Curr Protoc Immunol* 2010; **Chapter 15**: Unit 15.1 [PMID: 20143314 DOI: 10.1002/0471142735.im1501s88]

79 **McMahon EJ**, Bailey SL, Castenada CV, Waldner H, Miller SD. Epitope spreading initiates in the CNS in two mouse models of multiple sclerosis. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 335-339 [PMID: 15735651 DOI: 10.1186/ar3399]

80 **Ousman SS**, Tomooka BH, van Noort JM, Wawrousek EF, O'Connor KC, Hafler DA, Sobel RA, Robinson WH, Steinman L. Protective and therapeutic role for alphaB-crystallin in autoimmune demyelination. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 474-479 [PMID: 17568699 DOI: 10.1038/nature05935]

81 **Mathey EK**, Derfuss T, Storch MK, Williams KR, Hales K, Woolley DR, Al-Hayani A, Davies SN, Rasband MN, Olsson T, Moldenhauer A, Velhin S, Hohlfeld R, Meinl E, Linington C. Neurofascin as a novel target for autoantibody-mediated axonal injury. *J Exp Med* 2007; **204**: 2363-2372 [PMID: 17846150 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20071053]

82 **Herberman RB**. Natural killer cells. *Prog Clin Biol Res* 1989; **288**: 161-167 [PMID: 2470107]

83 **Maghazachi AA**. Chemokines, G proteins and natural killer cells. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp* (Warsz) 2000; **48**: 65-72 [PMID: 10807045]

84 **Maghazachi AA**. Role of chemokines in the biology of natural killer cells. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2010; **341**: 37-58 [PMID: 20369317 DOI: 10.1007/82_2010_20]

85 **Maghazachi AA**, Al-Aoukaty A. Chemokines activate natural killer cells through heterotrimeric G-proteins: implications for the treatment of AIDS and cancer. *FASEB J* 1998; **12**: 913-924 [PMID: 9707163]

86 **Yang Q**, Goding SR, Hokland ME, Basse PH. Antitumor activity of NK cells. *Immunol Res* 2006; **36**: 13-25 [PMID: 17337762]

87 **Maghazachi AA**. Insights into seven and single transmembrane-spanning domain receptors and their signaling pathways in human natural killer cells. *Pharmacol Rev* 2005; **57**: 339-357 [PMID: 16109839 DOI: 10.1124/pr.57.3.5]

88 **Kaur G**, Trowsdale J, Fugger L. Natural killer cells and their receptors in multiple sclerosis. *Brain* 2013; **136**: 2657-2676 [PMID: 22734127 DOI: 10.1093/brain/aws159]

89 **Oberg L**, Johansson S, Michaëlsson J, Tomasello E, Vivier E, Kärre K, Höglund P. Loss or mismatch of MHC class I is sufficient to trigger NK cell-mediated rejection of resting lymphocytes in vivo - role of KARAP/DAP12-dependent and -independent pathways. *Eur J Immunol* 2004; **34**: 1646-1653 [PMID: 15162434 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200424913]

90 **Maghazachi AA**. Compartmentalization of human natural killer cells. *Mol Immunol* 2005; **42**: 523-529 [PMID: 15607808 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2004.07.036]

91 **Maghazachi AA**. G protein-coupled receptors in natural killer cells. *J Leukoc Biol* 2003; **74**: 16-24 [PMID: 12832438 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0103019]

92 **Rolin J**, Maghazachi AA. Implications of chemokines, chemokine receptors, and inflammatory lipids in atherosclerosis. *J Leukoc Biol* 2014; **95**: 575-585 [PMID: 24493826]

93 **Peritt D**, Robertson S, Gri G, Showe L, Aste-Amezaga M, Trinchieri G. Differentiation of human NK cells into NK1 and NK2 subsets. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 5821-5824 [PMID: 9834059]

94 **Cella M**, Fuchs A, Vermi W, Facchetti F, Otero K, Lennerz JK, Doherty JM, Mills JC, Colonna M. A human natural killer cell subset provides an innate source of IL-22 for mucosal immunity. *Nature* 2009; **457**: 722-725 [PMID: 18978771 DOI: 10.1038/nature07537]

95 **Pandya AD**, Al-Jaderi Z, Høglund RA, Holmøy T, Harbo HF, Norgauer J, Maghazachi AA. Identification of human NK17/NK1 cells. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e26780 [PMID: 22039549 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0026780]

96 **Gandhi R**, Laroni A, Weiner HL. Role of the innate immune system in the pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. *J Neuroimmunol* 2010; **221**: 7-14 [PMID: 19931190 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2009.10.015]

97 **Maghazachi AA**. On the role of natural killer cells in neurodegenerative diseases. *Toxins* (Basel) 2013; **5**: 363-375 [PMID: 23430541 DOI: 10.3390/toxins5020363]

98 **Tian Z**, Gershwin ME, Zhang C. Regulatory NK cells in autoimmune disease. *J Autoimmun* 2012; **39**: 206-215 [PMID: 22704425 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2012.05.006]

99 **Segal BM**. The role of natural killer cells in curbing neuroinflammation. *J Neuroimmunol* 2007; **191**: 2-7 [PMID: 17904646 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2007.09.006]

100 **French AR**, Yokoyama WM. Natural killer cells and autoimmunity. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2004; **6**: 8-14 [PMID: 14979926 DOI: 10.1186/ar1342]

101 **Maghazachi AA**. Role of natural killer cells in multiple sclerosis. *ISRN Immunology* 2012; **2012**: Article ID 795075 [DOI: 10.5402/2012/795075]

102 **Zhang B**, Yamamura T, Kondo T, Fujiwara M, Tabira T. Regulation of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by natural killer (NK) cells. *J Exp Med* 1997; **186**: 1677-1687 [PMID: 9362528 DOI: 10.1084/jem.186.10.1677]

103 **Matsumoto Y**, Kohyama K, Aikawa Y, Shin T, Kawazoe Y, Suzuki Y, Tanuma N. Role of natural killer cells and TCR gamma delta T cells in acute autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Eur J Immunol* 1998; **28**: 1681-1688 [PMID: 9603475]

104 **Hao J**, Liu R, Piao W, Zhou Q, Vollmer TL, Campagnolo DI, Xiang R, La Cava A, Van Kaer L, Shi FD. Central nervous system (CNS)-resident natural killer cells suppress Th17 responses and CNS autoimmune pathology. *J Exp Med* 2010; **207**: 1907-1921 [PMID: 20696699 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20092749]

105 **Xu W**, Fazekas G, Hara H, Tabira T. Mechanism of natural killer (NK) cell regulatory role in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Neuroimmunol* 2005; **163**: 24-30 [PMID: 15885305 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2005.02.011]

106 **Huang D**, Shi FD, Jung S, Pien GC, Wang J, Salazar-Mather TP, He TT, Weaver JT, Ljunggren HG, Biron CA, Littman DR, Ransohoff RM. The neuronal chemokine CX3CL1/fractalkine selectively recruits NK cells that modify experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis within the central nervous system. *FASEB J* 2006; **20**: 896-905 [PMID: 16675847 DOI: 10.1096/fj.05-5465com]

107 **Winkler-Pickett R**, Young HA, Cherry JM, Diehl J, Wine J, Back T, Bere WE, Mason AT, Ortaldo JR. In vivo regulation of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by NK cells: alteration of primary adaptive responses. *J Immunol* 2008; **180**: 4495-4506 [PMID: 18354171 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.7.4495]

108 **Vollmer TL**, Liu R, Price M, Rhodes S, La Cava A, Shi FD. Differential effects of IL-21 during initiation and progression of autoimmunity against neuroantigen. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 2696-2701 [PMID: 15728477 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.5.2696]

109 **Benczur M**, Petrányl GG, Pálffy G, Varga M, Tálas M, Kotsy B, Földes I, Hollán SR. Dysfunction of natural killer cells in multiple sclerosis: a possible pathogenetic factor. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1980; **39**: 657-662 [PMID: 6155232]

110 **Kastrukoff LF**, Morgan NG, Zecchini D, White R, Petkau AJ, Satoh J, Paty DW. A role for natural killer cells in the immunopathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. *J Neuroimmunol* 1998; **86**: 123-133 [PMID: 9663557 DOI: 10.1016/S0165-5728(98)00014-9]

111 **Grunebaum E**, Malatzky-Goshen E, Shoenfeld Y. Natural killer cells and autoimmunity. *Immunol Res* 1989; **8**: 292-304 [PMID: 2687403 DOI: 10.1007/BF02935514]

112 **De Jager PL**, Rossin E, Pyne S, Tamayo P, Ottoboni L, Viglietta V, Weiner M, Soler D, Izmailova E, Faron-Yowe L, O'Brien C, Freeman S, Granados S, Parker A, Roubenoff R, Mesirov JP, Khoury SJ, Hafler DA, Weiner HL. Cytometric profiling in multiple sclerosis uncovers patient population structure and a reduction of CD8low cells. *Brain* 2008; **131**: 1701-1711 [PMID: 18567923 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awn118]

113 **Sand KL**, Knudsen E, Rolin J, Al-Falahi Y, Maghazachi AA. Modulation of natural killer cell cytotoxicity and cytokine release by the drug glatiramer acetate. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2009; **66**: 1446-1456 [PMID: 19277466 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-009-8726-1]

114 **Al-Falahi Y**, Sand KL, Knudsen E, Damaj BB, Rolin J, Maghazachi AA. Splenic natural killer cell activity in two models of experimental neurodegenerative diseases. *J Cell Mol Med* 2009; **13**: 2693-2703 [PMID: 19397784 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2008.00640]

115 **Høglund RA**, Holmøy T, Harbo HF, Maghazachi AA. A one year follow-up study of natural killer and dendritic cells activities in multiple sclerosis patients receiving glatiramer acetate (GA). *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e62237 [PMID: 23614042 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0062237]

116 **Cooper MA**, Yokoyama WM. Memory-like responses of natural killer cells. *Immunol Rev* 2010; **235**: 297-305 [PMID: 20536571 DOI: 10.1111/j.0105-2896.2010.00891]

117 **Zlotnik A**, Yoshie O. The Chemokine Superfamily Revisited. *Immunity* 2012; **36**: 705-716 [PMID: 22633458 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2012.05.008]

118 **Sallusto F**, Lanzavecchia A, Mackay CR. Chemokines and chemokine receptors in T-cell priming and Th1/Th2 mediated responses. *Immunol Today* 2008; **19**: 568-574 [PMID: 9864948 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-5699(98)01346-2]

P- Reviewer: Sotelo J, Sivak S **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Wu HL

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i3.38

World J Exp Med 2014 August 20; 4(3): 38-45
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

OBSERVATIONAL STUDY

Oxidative stress and labile plasmatic iron in anemic patients following blood therapy

Marília Sabo Fernandes, Tatiana Tamborena Rissi, Luisa Zuravski, Juliana Mezzomo, Carmen Regla Vargas, Vanderlei Folmer, Félix Alexandre Antunes Soares, Vanusa Manfredini, Mushtaq Ahmed, Robson Luiz Puntel

Marília Sabo Fernandes, Tatiana Tamborena Rissi, Luisa Zuravski, Juliana Mezzomo, Vanderlei Folmer, Vanusa Manfredini, Robson Luiz Puntel, Universidade Federal do Pampa, Campus Uruguaiana, Uruguaiana RS 97500-970, Brazil
Carmen Regla Vargas, Serviço de Genética Médica, Laboratório de Análise de Metabólitos, Hospital de Clínicas de Porto Alegre, Porto Alegre RS CEP 90035-003, Brazil
Félix Alexandre Antunes Soares, Departamento de Química, Centro de Ciências Naturais e Exatas, Universidade Federal de Santa Maria, Santa Maria RS CEP 97105-900, Brazil
Mushtaq Ahmed, Department of Biotechnology, University of Science and Technology, Bannu 28100, Pakistan
Author contributions: Fernandes MS, Rissi TT, Zuravski L and Mezzomo J performed the experiments; Vargas CR, Folmer V, and Soares FAA were involved in the statistical analysis and also in the writing of the manuscript; Ahmed M was involved in the writing of the manuscript and in the English language revision; Manfredini V and Puntel RL designed the study and wrote the manuscript.
Supported by Grants from the Universidade Federal do Pampa, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul, Universidade Federal de Santa Maria, Fundação de Amparo a Pesquisa do Estado do Rio Grande do Sul (FAPERGS) - FAPERGS/PRONEX, and FAPERGS/PRONEM, Coordenação de Aperfeiçoamento de Pessoal de Nível Superior, Conselho Nacional de Desenvolvimento Científico e Tecnológico, Financiadora de Estudos e Projetos
Correspondence to: Robson Luiz Puntel, PhD, Professor on Universidade Federal do Pampa, Campus Uruguaiana, BR-472 Km 585, Caixa Postal 118, Uruguaiana RS 97500-970, Brazil. robsonunipampa@gmail.com
Telephone: +55-55-34134321
Received: January 22, 2014 Revised: June 19, 2014
Accepted: July 27, 2014
Published online: August 20, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To determine the plasmatic iron content and evaluate the oxidative stress (OS) markers in subjects receiving blood therapy.

METHODS: Thirty-nine individuals with unspecified anemia receiving blood transfusions and 15 healthy subjects were included in the study. Anemic subjects were divided into three subgrouP: (1) those that received up to five blood transfusions (n = 14); (2) those that received from five to ten transfusions (n = 11); and (3) those that received more than ten transfusions (n = 14). Blood samples were collected by venous arm puncture and stored in tubes containing heparin. The plasma and cells were separated by centrifugation and subsequently used for analyses. Statistical analyses were performed using Kruskal-Wallis analysis of variance followed by Dunn's multiple comparison tests when appropriate.

RESULTS: The eletrophoretic hemoglobin profiles of the subjects included in this study indicated that no patients presented with hemoglobinopathy. Labile plasmatic iron, ferritin, protein carbonyl, thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances (TBARS) and dichlorofluorescein diacetate oxidation were significantly higher ($P < 0.05$), whereas total thiol levels were significantly lower ($P < 0.05$) in transfused subjects compared to controls. Additionally, the activity of catalase, superoxide dismutase and glutathione peroxidase were significantly lower in the transfused subjects ($P < 0.05$). Antioxidant enzyme activities and total thiol levels were positively correlated ($P < 0.05$), and negatively correlated with the levels of protein carbonyl and TBARS ($P < 0.05$). In contrast, protein carbonyl and TBARS were positively correlated ($P < 0.05$). Altogether, these data confirm the involvement of OS in patients following therapy with repeated blood transfusions.

CONCLUSION: Our data reveal that changes in OS markers are correlated with levels of labile plasmatic iron and ferritin and the number of transfusions.

Key words: Antioxidant enzymes; Labile iron content;

Oxidative stress; Polytransfused subjects

Core tip: Here, the readers will find important information regarding iron accumulation and its correlation with oxidative damage markers in anemic subjects following blood therapy. This research, regarding iron accumulation and its associated toxicology is remarkable because the mechanism(s) involved in its mode of action are not fully understood. Thus, our data are extremely important for research concerning the involvement of iron overload on the development of human diseases.

Fernandes MS, Rissi TT, Zuravski L, Mezzomo J, Vargas CR, Folmer V, Soares FAA, Manfredini V, Ahmed M, Puntel RL. Oxidative stress and labile plasmatic iron in anemic patients following blood therapy. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(3): 38-45 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i3/38.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i3.38

INTRODUCTION

Iron is an essential element of cells that participates in various cellular processes due to its ability to accept and donate electrons, interconverting between Fe^{3+} and Fe^{2+} forms[1]. However, this redox property renders iron potentially toxic in biologic systems. The labile plasmatic iron (LPI) component of non-transferrin-bound iron is redox-active, chelatable and capable of permeating into organs to induce tissue iron overload[2]. Thus, LPI is an accessible diagnostic marker of iron overload and cell toxicity[2]. Moreover, LPI can participate in the Fenton reaction and generate a large amount of reactive oxygen species (ROS)[3]. To prevent ROS overproduction, circulating and intracellular free iron are tightly regulated by binding to transferrin, ferritin and other proteins[4,5]. However, the iron balance can be disrupted in some situations, such as with chronic anemia, repeated blood transfusions, and following increased gastrointestinal absorption, which lead to iron overload[6]. Therefore, subjects undergoing repeated blood transfusions are at risk of iron-associated toxicity[7].

Elevated tissue iron can overwhelm protective mechanisms and lead to an increase in iron complexes with small molecules, such as nucleotides and citrate, in the serum of transfusion patients and also within cytoplasm and organelles[8,9]. Furthermore, repeated blood transfusions increase the levels of iron available to generate catalytically active complexes, free radicals and oxidative damage[9]. Thus, LPI promotes free radical formation that culminates in the oxidation of biomolecules. Accordingly, iron overload in humans and in experimental animals is associated with oxidative stress (OS)[10]. Indeed, it is known that an imbalance in the oxidant/antioxidant status of the cell is associated with OS, leading to important cellular macromolecule modifications and cell damage[11]. The cell injury observed in patients with iron overload is attributed to OS[12]. Hence, the oxidation reactions result in the formation of lipid peroxides and protein carbonyls, damaged deoxyribonucleic acid bases, and mitochondrial dysfunction[13]. Additionally, individuals with an iron overload demonstrate impaired antioxidant defenses[6]. Accordingly, the long-term consequence of chronic iron overload is organ injury, which could contribute to the initiation and development of several metabolic disorders, such as endocrinopathies, diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, hypogonadism and heart failure[14].

In general, oxidative damage of biomolecules can be counteracted by enzymatic as well as non-enzymatic defenses. Indeed, humans have several biologic mechanisms to defend against intracellular OS. One of the most important mechanisms involves the actions of antioxidant enzymes, such as superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), and glutathione peroxidase (GPx)[15]. In spite of a well-developed antioxidant defense system, cells can still be oxidatively damaged under some pathologic conditions[11].

Data concerning labile iron accumulation in anemic subjects receiving repeated blood transfusions and the association with oxidative damage markers are scarce in the literature. We hypothesize that OS correlates with LPI in anemic patients following therapy with repeated blood transfusions. In this study, we evaluated OS markers and the activity of enzymatic antioxidant defenses in the blood of patients receiving repeated transfusions and in control subjects (not transfused). Additionally, we determined the LPI and ferritin levels in these subjects and correlated both parameters with other evaluated markers.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Chemicals

1,1,3,3-tetramethoxypropane, 2-thiobarbituric acid, sodium dodecyl sulfate, 5,5'-dithiobis-(2-nitrobenzoic acid), trichloroacetic acid, 2',7'-dichlorodihydrofluorescein diacetate (DCHF-DA), and 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine, were purchased from Sigma (St. Louis, MO, United States). The kit for iron determination was obtained from Bio-Systems Corp. (Beloit, WI, United States), kits for measuring SOD (RANSOD) and GPx (RANSEL) were purchased from Randox Laboratories Ltf. (Crumlin, United Kingdom), and the Total Protein kit for protein determination was obtained from BioClin (Delft, Netherlands). All the other chemicals were commercial products of the highest purity grade available.

Subjects

This study was approved by the Ethics Committee in Research of Universidade Federal do Pampa. Altogether, 39 individuals with unspecified anemia receiving blood transfusions and 15 healthy subjects (blood donors) from the Banco de Sangue do Municipio de Uruguaiana were included in the study. Since most of our patients were male, the female patients were excluded from this study. Thus, both anemic and control healthy individuals were male. Anemic individuals were included in the study if they were diagnosed according to the International

Classification of Diseases (anemia unspecified, ICD 10: D64.9), and were not diagnosed with other diseases, such as cancer, renal failure, hepatic disease, blood loss or others. Additionally, anemic patients had received blood therapy during the year prior to collection (*i.e.*, no more than 12 mo from the first transfusion until sample collection). Additionally, it is important to mention here that the sample collection was done before a new transfusion, namely clinical screening. The anemic subjects were divided into three subgrouP: (1) those that received less than five blood transfusions (n = 14); (2) those that received from five to ten blood transfusions (n = 11); and (3) those that received more than ten blood transfusions (n = 14).

Sample collection

Blood from controls and anemic subjects was collected by venous arm puncture and stored in tubes containing heparin. The plasma and cells were separated by centrifugation at 1500 r/min for 10 min and were subsequently used for biochemical analyses. All biochemical assays were done in duplicate or triplicate, depending on availability of samples.

Analysis of hemoglobin

The electrophoretic analysis of hemoglobin was performed using a Minicap system (Sebia, Norcross, France) according to the manufacturer's instructions, and controls were run with each test. The Minicap system uses the principle of capillary electrophoresis in free solution. Charged molecules are separated by their electrophoretic mobility in an alkaline buffer with a specific pH. Separation also occurs according to the electrolyte pH and electro-osmotic flow. Electropherograms were expressed with zones divided from Z1 to Z15 based on standardizing the location of hemoglobin as previously described[16].

Measurement of LPI

LPI refers to non-heme bound, non-ferritin bound and non-transferrin-bound iron (*i.e.*, free iron) according to the previously validated convention[17]. The LPI content was determined by its reactivity with ferrozine, in the presence of the denaturant sodium dodecyl sulfate and the reducing agents ascorbate and sodium metabisulphite, as previously described[18,19]. The results are expressed as μg/dL.

Ferritin

Ferritin content was determined as described by Bernard and Lauwerys[20]. Serum ferritin causes agglutination of latex particles coated with anti-human ferritin that is proportional to the concentration of ferritin and can be measured by turbidimetry. The results are expressed as μg/L ferritin.

Protein carbonyl determination

Protein carbonyl content, which is indicative of oxidation, was determined as described by Levine *et al*[21]. Plasma samples were added to 0.2 mL of 10% trichloroacetic acid and placed on ice for 5 min. After centrifugation (5 min), samples were incubated for 90 min at 37 ℃ with 1 mL of 10 mmol/L 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine in 2 mol/L HCl. Finally, proteins were dissolved in 6 mol/L guanidine and interference was removed after washing with ethanol-ethyl acetate 1:1 (v/v). The extent of the damage was estimated by reading absorbance at 370 nm. The results are expressed as nmol carbonyl/mg protein.

Determination of thiobarbituric acid reactive substances levels

Levels of thiobarbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS) in plasma were determined using the method described by Ohkawa *et al*[22]. In brief, samples were incubated in acidic medium containing 0.45% sodium dodecyl sulfate and 0.6% thiobarbituric acid at 100°C for 60 min. After centrifugation, the reaction product was determined at 532 nm using a 1,1,3,3-tetramethoxypropaneas standard and the results are expressed as nmol malondialdehyde/mg protein.

Total thiol determination

Plasmatic total thiol was determined as described by Ellman *et al*[23]. The colorimetric assay was carried out in 1 mol/L phosphate buffer (pH 7.4) and calculated against a standard curve constructed with glutathione. Total thiol content is expressed as nmol total thiol/mg protein.

Determination of DCHF-DA oxidation

The determination of intracellular oxidant production was based on the cleavage of DCHF-DA to DCHF, which fluoresces when oxidized by ROS according to previously described methods[24]. The plasma sample was diluted (1:10) in 10 mmol/L Tris-HCl buffer. Then, 50 μL of diluted plasma was incubated with 10 μmol/L DCHF-DA at 37 ℃ for 20 min. The fluorescence emission at 520 nm was measured using a Perkin-Elmer spectrofluorometer with an excitation wavelength of 488 nm and an emission wavelength of 520 nm. The results are expressed as arbitrary fluorescence units.

CAT activity

CAT activity was measured by the method previously described[25]. Packed erythrocytes were hemolyzed by adding 100 volumes of distilled water, then 20 μL of this hemolyzed sample was added to a cuvette and the reaction was started by the addition of 100 μL of freshly prepared 300 mmol/L H_2O_2 in phosphate buffer (50 mmol/L, pH 7.0) to give a final volume of 1 mL. The rate of H_2O_2 decomposition was measured by a spectrophotometer at 240 nm for a duration of 2 min. The CAT activity is expressed as UI/mg protein.

SOD activity

SOD activity was measured in erythrocytes using a RANSOD kit, which uses xanthine and xanthine

Table 1 Subject characteristics

Characteristics	Controls (n = 15)	Transfusions		
		< 5 (n = 14)	5-10 (n = 11)	> 10 (n = 14)
Age (yr)	40.1 (20–50)	62.8 (24–92)	64.8 (49–84)	57.5 (24–74)
Number of transfusions	0 (0)	3.20 (2–4)	7.17 (5–9)	18.78 (14–26)
Hemoglobin (g/dL)	13.8 ± 0.5	7.5 ± 2.1	6.75 ± 0.5	4.9 ± 0.9
Labile iron content (μg/dL)	108.9 ± 13.8	149.2 ± 45.1	216.2 ± 68.3[a]	366.9 ± 68.5[a]
Ferritin (μg/L)	219.6 ± 18.2	190.3 ± 11.7	221.2 ± 16.1	277.5 ± 27.5[a]

Values are presented as median (range), or mean ± standard deviation; [a]P < 0.05 *vs* control.

oxidase to produce superoxide radicals that react with 2-(4-iodophenyl)-3-(4-nitrophenyl)-5-phenyltetrazol chloride to form formazan red. The SOD activity was measured by the degree of inhibition of this reaction at 505 nm and is expressed as UI/mg protein.

GPx activity

GPx activity was determined in erythrocytes using the RANSEL kit according to the method previously described[26]. The GPx activity is expressed as UI/mg protein.

Protein determination

The protein content was determined by the biuret method using the Total Protein kit with bovine serum albumin as a standard. The copper ions in an alkaline medium (biuret reagent) react with peptide, producing a purple color, whose intensity is proportional to the concentration of proteins in the samples being measured in a spectrophotometer at 545 nm.

Statistical analysis

All results are reported as median (range) and presented as box-plot graphics for the different grouP of patients. Hemoglobin, LPI and ferritin levels are presented as mean ± SD deviation. A Shapiro-Wilk test was performed to assess the normality of data distributions, and Kruskal-Wallis analysis of variance followed by Dunn's multiple comparison tests were used when appropriate. Spearman's correlational analyses were also performed between variables. For all analyses, we used a GraphPad Prism 5.0 software, and a $P < 0.05$ was considered significant.

RESULTS

Patient characteristics are presented in Table 1. Electrophoretic analyses indicated that all subjects had normal hemoglobin profiles (data not shown). As expected, LPI and ferritin levels were higher in the transfused subjects. Specifically, subjects receiving five or more transfusions had significantly higher LPI levels ($P < 0.05$), and patients receiving more than ten transfusions had significantly higher ferritin levels ($P < 0.05$) compared to controls. Additionally, we found that the number of transfusions was significantly correlated with LPI and ferritin levels ($P < 0.05$) (Table 2).

The OS markers TBARS (Figure 1A), protein carbonyl (Figure 1B) and DCFH-DA oxidation (Figure 1C) were all significantly higher in transfused subjects compared to the control group ($P < 0.05$). However, total thiol levels were significantly lower in subjects receiving more than ten transfusions compared to controls ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 1D).

The activity CAT and GPx were significantly lower in subjects receiving five or more transfusions compared to controls ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 2A and C). SOD activity was significantly lower in subjects receiving more than ten transfusions compared with controls ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 2B). Furthermore, significant negative correlations were observed between the number of transfusions and the activity of these antioxidant enzymes ($P < 0.05$) (Table 2).

Additional correlations were found between LPI levels and OS markers ($P < 0.05$), with the exception of DCDH-DA oxidation (Table 2). LPI and ferritin were negatively correlated with antioxidant enzyme activities and total thiol, and positively correlated with carbonyl and TBARS levels (all $P < 0.05$). Indeed, it was found that antioxidant enzyme activities were positively correlated with total thiol levels, and negatively correlated with the levels of protein carbonyl and TBARS ($P < 0.05$). In contrast, protein carbonyl and TBARS levels were positively correlated ($P < 0.05$).

DISCUSSION

Our data are in accordance with a previous study showing that the increase in LPI content could lead to an increase in ROS generation, and consequently an increase in oxidative damage[12]. Additionally, based on data concerning hemoglobin profile, we discarded hemoglobin disorders in these individuals. These data are extremely important to avoid misinterpretations, as it was previously shown that any imbalance between α and β chains of hemoglobin (α or β-thalassemia, respectively) plays a crucial role in OS[27]. Besides, there are data linking the observed levels of the various biomarkers evaluated in this study to health outcomes, such as in renal failure[28] and breast cancer[29].

Taking into account our results and those previously found, it is plausible to assume that under blood transfusion therapy, the excess of labile (catalytically active) iron must generate free radicals *via* Fenton chemistry, resulting in oxidative damage to biomolecules *in vivo*[30]. Our assumption is further supported by a previous report showing that iron-catalyzed ROS generation leads to an increase in the genomic instability in hematopoietic progenitor cells[31]. Moreover, it was shown in animal models that iron overload causes liver damage *via* both oxidative and nitrosative mechanisms[32]. Indeed, we assume that under repeated blood transfusions, the iron content increases to values that overwhelm the protective mechanisms, leading to an increase in the amount of iron available to form complexes with small molecules, the

Table 2 Spearman's correlations between biochemical and oxidative markers in polytransfused subjects

	LPI	Ferritin	GPx	SOD	CAT	TBARS	DCHF-DA oxidation	Carbonyl	Total thiol
Transfusion number	0.8569[b]	0.7991[b]	-0.8796[b]	-0.7103[b]	-0.8143[b]	0.5114[b]	0.0111	0.5793[b]	-0.5555[b]
Total thiol	-0.4151[b]	-0.3354[b]	0.4830[b]	0.4849[b]	0.5401[b]	-0.2790[b]	0.0106	-0.1164	-
Carbonyl	0.5583[b]	0.5122[b]	-0.5613[b]	-0.3713[b]	-0.4862[b]	0.5208[b]	-0.0627	-	-
DCHF-DA oxidation	-0.1291	-0.0049	0.0370	-0.0446	-0.0401	-0.2293[a]	-	-	-
TBARS	0.4984[b]	0.4144[b]	-0.4638[b]	-0.3113[b]	-0.3457[b]	-	-	-	-
CAT	-0.7266[b]	-0.5944[b]	0.8945[b]	0.7251[b]	-	-	-	-	-
SOD	-0.6085[b]	-0.5744[b]	0.7443[b]	-	-	-	-	-	-
GPx	-0.7973[b]	-0.7144[b]	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ferritin	0.9112[b]	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

[a]$P < 0.05$, [b]$P < 0.001$ *vs* DCHF-DA oxidation. CAT: Catalase; DCHF-DA: 2',7'-dichlorodihydrofluorescein diacetate; GPx: Glutathione peroxidase; LPI: Labile plasmatic iron; SOD: Superoxide dismutase; TBARS: Thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances.

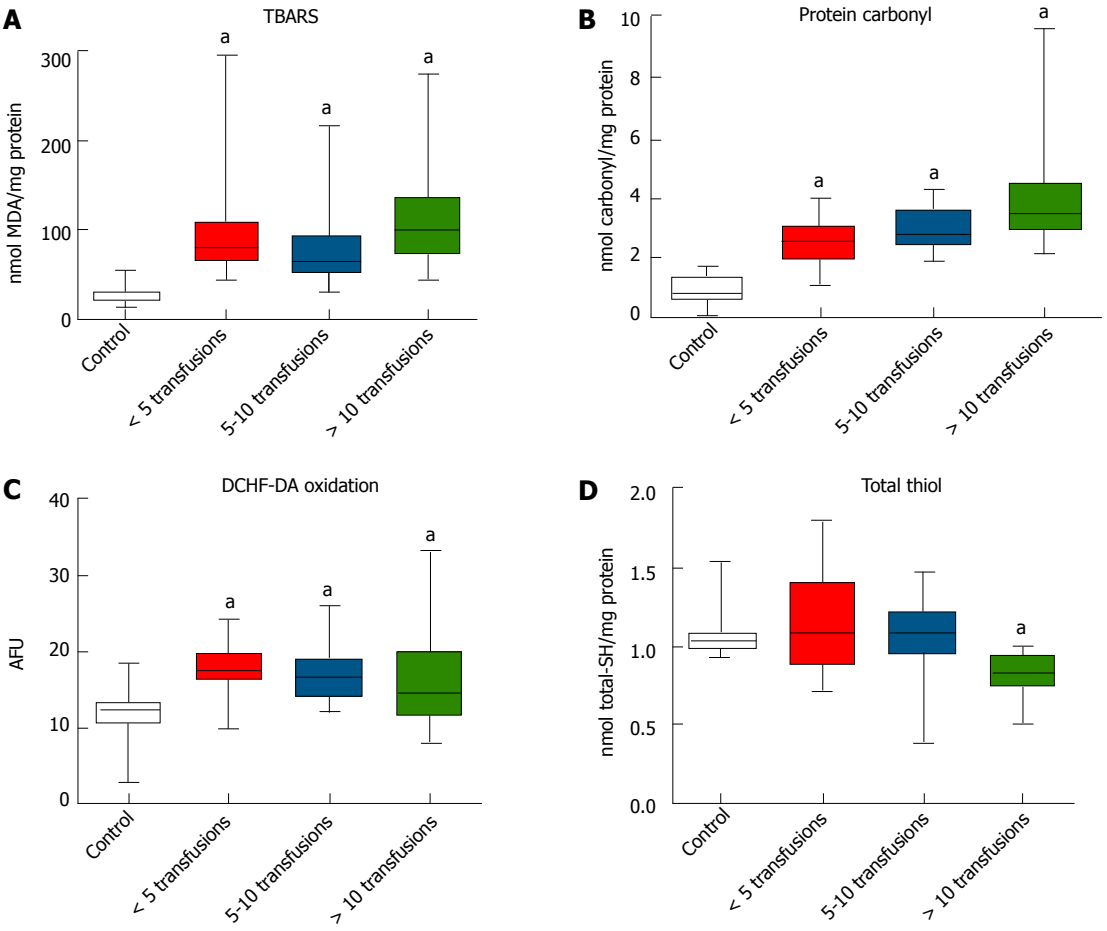


Figure 1 Oxidative stress markers in transfusion patients. A: Thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances (TBARS); B: Protein carbonyl; C: 2',7'-dichlorodihydrofluorescein diacetate (DCHF-DA) oxidation; and D: Total thiol levels in controls (n = 15), those receiving < 5 transfusions (n = 14), 5-10 transfusions (n = 11), and > 10 transfusions (n = 14); [a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* controls.

"catalytically active iron complexes". Thus, we assume that the ROS generated are responsible for the oxidation of DCHF-DA found in the transfused subjects, which is supported by a previous report showing that overload with iron (ferric nitrilotriacetate) leads to an increase in DCHF-DA oxidation in cultured rat hepatocytes[33].

Interestingly, we found some changes in the OS parameters even in the absence of significant iron accumulation, suggesting that alterations in OS markers could precede iron accumulation in patients following blood therapy. Accordingly, it seems logical that the differences in other parameters, such as hemoglobin and ferritin levels, could potentially contribute to the different oxidative state among patients. Thus, it is difficult to affirm that iron alone is the primary factor responsible for these differences. This point is extremely relevant and deserves further attention in future investigations.

The results of this study also show that levels of

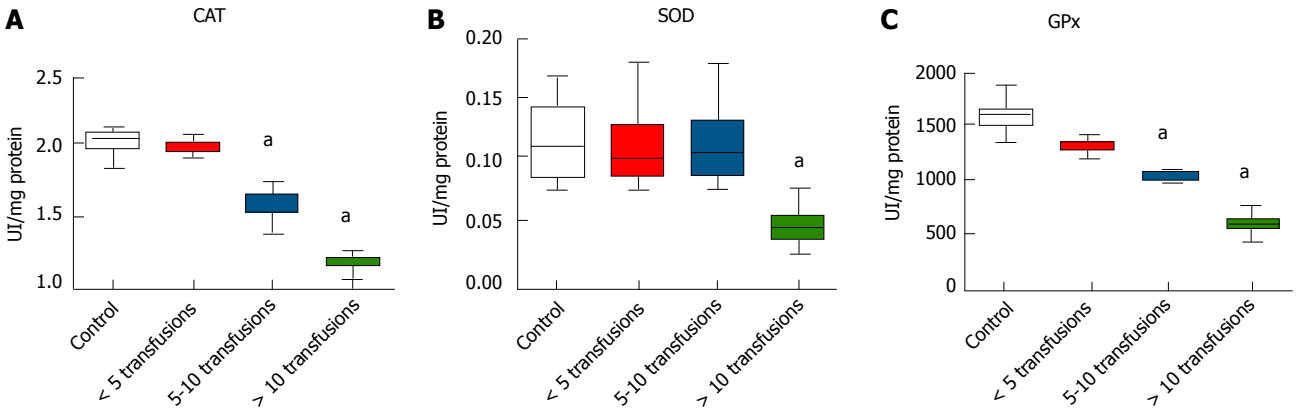


Figure 2 Antioxidant enzymes in transfusion patients. A: Catalase (CAT) activity; B: Superoxide dismutase (SOD) activity; and C: Glutathione peroxidase (GPx) activity in controls (n = 15), those receiving < 5 transfusions (n = 14), 5-10 transfusions (n = 11), and > 10 transfusions (n = 14); $^{a}P < 0.05$ *vs* controls.

TBARS significantly increased in subjects receiving blood transfusions, which was positively correlated to LPI content, ferritin content and the number of transfusions. These findings are in accordance to previous reports showing that the levels of lipid peroxidation products were increased in β-thalassaemic patients receiving blood transfusions[19] and in subjects with hepatic iron overload[6]. Moreover, we found a significant increase in the protein carbonyl in the subjects receiving repeated blood transfusions, which was correlated with LPI content. Additionally, our data are in accordance to a previous paper showing a significant increase in the protein carbonyl content associated with iron overload[33].

A significant reduction in total thiol levels was found in the subjects receiving repeated blood transfusions, which is consistent with a report showing a decrease in thiol content in the liver of rats treated with iron[34]. Albeit not completely understood, we believe that thiols are oxidized (consumed/used) in these subjects due to OS status following iron overload. Another possibility is that the iron could react non-enzymatically with thiols in plasma to generate ROS, which directly leads to reduction of antioxidant capacity in plasma and the increased susceptibility of blood components to oxidation[35]. Thus, this thiol-dependent free radical generation by iron overload might be a potential contributing factor for the changes in the oxidative markers reported here. Our assumptions are supported by a study showing that oxygen radicals can be produced by iron-catalyzed auto-oxidation of cysteine or glutathione[36]. Therefore, the generated ROS (either by Fenton chemistry or by iron-catalyzed auto-oxidation of thiols) may be responsible for the oxidation of other biomolecules reported here, such as lipids and proteins.

The results of the present study demonstrate a marked decrease in antioxidant enzyme activity in the subjects with iron overload, which is consistent with previous reports[30,33]. Moreover, enzyme activities were negatively correlated with LPI, TBARS and protein carbonyl levels. In line with this, we presume that the decrease in the enzymatic activity of antioxidants further contributed to the OS condition. Indeed, Chakraborty *et al*[19] showed that the decrease in antioxidant enzymes strongly contributes to an increase in OS markers (TBARS, protein carbonyl and ROS). Although our data do not support this supposition, we hypothesize that a decrease in the antioxidant enzymes reported here could, at least in part, be due to a decrease in their expression. Indeed, it was previously shown that both CAT and GPx were downregulated under OS conditions in human cells[37]. However, the mechanisms regulating the expression of antioxidant enzymes under iron overload remain to be explored in more detail.

Our data confirms the involvement of OS in patients following therapy with repeated blood transfusions. Additionally, we found that the changes in the OS markers are correlated with iron content, ferritin and the number of transfusions. Thus, iron chelators that efficiently decrease the levels of labile iron are candidates to counteract the iron-induced ROS generation[38]. However, more studies are necessary to better understand the mechanism(s) associated with iron-induced oxidative changes, to minimize the side effects associated to blood transfusion therapy, and to provide some clinical benefits. As antioxidant supplementation is not entirely safe and may cause unfavorable effects to different patients, more discussion on its potential benefits is warranted[39].

In conclusion, our data confirm the involvement of OS and its correlation with LPI and ferritin in unspecified anemic patients following therapy with repeated blood transfusions. However, we found some alterations of OS markers even in the absence of significant iron accumulation, which encourages us to further explore the changes in the OS parameters that occur before iron overload in subjects receiving blood therapy.

COMMENTS

Background

Iron is an essential element that participates in several metabolic activities of cells. However, in excess, iron can be a cause of oxidative stress (OS) in subjects undergoing blood transfusion therapy. Despite this, the relationship between plasmatic iron content, OS markers and the activity of antioxidant enzymes in anemic subjects receiving repeated blood transfusions remains to be better characterized.

Research frontiers

Blood therapy has been used in medical practice to treat anemic patients. However, the increase in the iron level in patients following blood therapy must be considered. Thus, the purpose of this research was to better understand the changes associated with OS markers in patients undergoing blood therapy in order to prevent iron-supported oxidative damage in anemic subjects.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Previous data have shown that blood therapy is associated with iron overload, and consequently, with oxidative changes in various tissues. However, efficient therapies to prevent the side effects associated with repeated blood transfusions are not known. Thus, elucidative studies regarding the plasmatic oxidative changes associated with iron overload are necessary. Here, the authors found that anemic subjects undergoing transfusions show increased levels of plasmatic labile iron, protein carbonyl, thiobarbituric acid reactive substances, and 2',7'-dichlorodihydrofluorescein diacetate oxidation, as well as decreased total thiol levels. Additionally, the activities of superoxide dismutase, catalase, and glutathione peroxidase were significantly lower in the transfused subjects. Significant correlations were found between the number of transfusions, plasmatic iron content, OS markers and the activity of the antioxidant enzymes.

Applications

The results of this study suggest that antioxidants could be associated with blood therapy. Additionally, iron chelators that efficiently decrease the levels of labile iron could be used to counteract the iron-induced generation of reactive oxygen species. However, more studies are necessary to better understand the mechanism(s) associated with iron-induced oxidative changes in order to minimize the side effects associated with blood transfusion therapy and to provide clinical benefits.

Peer review

This is a study that contains important information regarding iron accumulation in anemic subjects receiving repeated blood transfusions and its correlation with the plasmatic oxidative damage markers in these subjects.

REFERENCES

1 **Premkumar K**, Min K, Alkan Z, Hawkes WC, Ebeler S, Bowlus CL. The potentiating and protective effects of ascorbate on oxidative stress depend upon the concentration of dietary iron fed C3H mice. *J Nutr Biochem* 2007; **18**: 272-278 [PMID: 16860981 DOI: 10.1016/j.jnutbio.2006.05.004]

2 **Cabantchik ZI**, Breuer W, Zanninelli G, Cianciulli P. LPI-labile plasma iron in iron overload. *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 2005; **18**: 277-287 [PMID: 15737890 DOI: 10.1016/j.beha.2004.10.003]

3 **Orino K**, Lehman L, Tsuji Y, Ayaki H, Torti SV, Torti FM. Ferritin and the response to oxidative stress. *Biochem J* 2001; **357**: 241-247 [PMID: 11415455]

4 **Young IS**, Woodside JV. Antioxidants in health and disease. *J Clin Pathol* 2001; **54**: 176-186 [PMID: 11253127 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.54.3.176]

5 **Hershko C**, Graham G, Bates GW, Rachmilewitz EA. Non-specific serum iron in thalassaemia: an abnormal serum iron fraction of potential toxicity. *Br J Haematol* 1978; **40**: 255-263 [PMID: 708645 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1978.tb03662.x]

6 **Walter PB**, Fung EB, Killilea DW, Jiang Q, Hudes M, Madden J, Porter J, Evans P, Vichinsky E, Harmatz P. Oxidative stress and inflammation in iron-overloaded patients with beta-thalassaemia or sickle cell disease. *Br J Haematol* 2006; **135**: 254-263 [PMID: 17010049 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.2006.06277.x]

7 **Lambing A**, Kachalsky E, Mueller ML. The dangers of iron overload: bring in the iron police. *J Am Acad Nurse Pract* 2012; **24**: 175-183 [PMID: 22486832 DOI: 10.1111/j.1745-7599.2011.00680.x]

8 **Zanninelli G**, Loréal O, Brissot P, Konijn AM, Slotki IN, Hider RC, Ioav Cabantchik Z. The labile iron pool of hepatocytes in chronic and acute iron overload and chelator-induced iron deprivation. *J Hepatol* 2002; **36**: 39-46 [PMID: 11804662 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(01)00222-7]

9 **Gutteridge JM**, Rowley DA, Griffiths E, Halliwell B. Low-molecular-weight iron complexes and oxygen radical reactions in idiopathic haemochromatosis. *Clin Sci* (Lond) 1985; **68**: 463-467 [PMID: 2578915]

10 **Sinha S**, Saxena R. Effect of iron on lipid peroxidation, and enzymatic and non-enzymatic antioxidants and bacoside-A content in medicinal plant Bacopa monnieri L. *Chemosphere* 2006; **62**: 1340-1350 [PMID: 16219336 DOI: 10.1016/j.chemosphere.2005.07.030]

11 **Domanski AV**, LaPhina EA, Zavodnik IB. Oxidative processes induced by tert-butyl hydroperoxide in human red blood cells: chemiluminescence studies. *Biochemistry* (Mosc) 2005; **70**: 761-769 [PMID: 16097939 DOI: 10.1007/s10541-005-0181-5]

12 **Gattermann N**, Rachmilewitz EA. Iron overload in MDS-pathophysiology, diagnosis, and complications. *Ann Hematol* 2011; **90**: 1-10 [PMID: 20938663 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-010-1091-1]

13 **Welch KD**, Davis TZ, Van Eden ME, Aust SD. Deleterious iron-mediated oxidation of biomolecules. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2002; **32**: 577-583 [PMID: 11909692 DOI: 10.1016/S0891-5849(02)00760-8]

14 **Cunningham MJ**, Macklin EA, Neufeld EJ, Cohen AR. Complications of beta-thalassemia major in North America. *Blood* 2004; **104**: 34-39 [PMID: 14988152]

15 **Scott MD**. H2O2 injury in beta thalassemic erythrocytes: protective role of catalase and the prooxidant effects of GSH. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2006; **40**: 1264-1272 [PMID: 16545695 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2005.11.017]

16 **Kim JE**, Kim BR, Woo KS, Kim JM, Park JI, Han JY. Comparison of capillary electrophoresis with cellulose acetate electrophoresis for the screening of hemoglobinopathies. *Korean J Lab Med* 2011; **31**: 238-243 [PMID: 22016676 DOI: 10.3343/kjlm.2011.31.4.238]

17 **Kuross SA**, Hebbel RP. Nonheme iron in sickle erythrocyte membranes: association with phospholipids and potential role in lipid peroxidation. *Blood* 1988; **72**: 1278-1285 [PMID: 3167208]

18 **Repka T**, Shalev O, Reddy R, Yuan J, Abrahamov A, Rachmilewitz EA, Low P, Hebbel RP. Nonrandom association of free iron with membranes of sickle and beta-thalassemic erythrocytes. *Blood* 1993; **82**: 3204-3210 [PMID: 8219209]

19 **Chakraborty D**, Bhattacharyya M. Antioxidant defense status of red blood cells of patients with beta-thalassemia and Ebeta-thalassemia. *Clin Chim Acta* 2001; **305**: 123-129 [PMID: 11249931 DOI: 10.1016/S0009-8981(00)00428-9]

20 **Bernard A**, Lauwerys R. Turbidimetric latex immunoassay for serum ferritin. *J Immunol Methods* 1984; **71**: 141-147 [PMID: 6736656 DOI: 10.1016/0022-1759(84)90060-7]

21 **Levine RL**, Garland D, Oliver CN, Amici A, Climent I, Lenz AG, Ahn BW, Shaltiel S, Stadtman ER. Determination of carbonyl content in oxidatively modified proteins. *Methods Enzymol* 1990; **186**: 464-478 [PMID: 1978225 DOI: 10.1016/0076-6879(90)86141-H]

22 **Ohkawa H**, Ohishi N, Yagi K. Assay for lipid peroxides in animal tissues by thiobarbituric acid reaction. *Anal Biochem* 1979; **95**: 351-358 [PMID: 36810 DOI: 10.1016/0003-2697(79)90738-3]

23 **Ellman G**, Lysko H. A precise method for the determination of whole blood and plasma sulfhydryl grouP. *Anal Biochem* 1979; **93**: 98-102 [PMID: 434474 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-2697(79)80122-0]

24 **Karja NW**, Kikuchi K, Fahrudin M, Ozawa M, Somfai T, Ohnuma K, Noguchi J, Kaneko H, Nagai T. Development to the blastocyst stage, the oxidative state, and the quality of early developmental stage of porcine embryos cultured in alteration of glucose concentrations in vitro under different oxygen tensions. *Reprod Biol Endocrinol* 2006; **4**: 54 [PMID: 17087833 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7827-4-54]

25 **Aebi H**. Catalase in vitro. *Methods Enzymol* 1984; **105**: 121-126 [PMID: 6727660 DOI: 10.1016/S0076-6879(84)05016-3]

26 **Paglia DE**, Valentine WN. Studies on the quantitative and qualitative characterization of erythrocyte glutathione peroxidase. *J Lab Clin Med* 1967; **70**: 158-169 [PMID: 6066618]

27 **Manca L**, Masala B. Disorders of the synthesis of human fetal hemoglobin. *IUBMB Life* 2008; **60**: 94-111 [PMID: 18379999 DOI: 10.1002/iub.4]

28 **Bartnicki P**, Fijałkowski P, Majczyk M, Błaszczyk J, Banach M, Rysz J. Effect of methoxy polyethylene glycol-epoetin beta on oxidative stress in predialysis patients with chronic kidney disease. *Med Sci Monit* 2013; **19**: 954-959 [PMID: 24201565 DOI: 10.12659/MSM.884024]

29 **Panis C**, Herrera AC, Victorino VJ, Campos FC, Freitas LF, De Rossi T, Colado Simão AN, Cecchini AL, Cecchini R. Oxidative stress and hematological profiles of advanced breast cancer patients subjected to paclitaxel or doxorubicin chemotherapy. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **133**: 89-97 [PMID: 21811816 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-011-1693-x]

30 **Zhang Y**, Huang Y, Deng X, Xu Y, Gao Z, Li H. Iron overload-induced rat liver injury: Involvement of protein tyrosine nitration and the effect of baicalin. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2012; **680**: 95-101 [PMID: 22306240 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2012.01.010]

31 **Naka K**, Muraguchi T, Hoshii T, Hirao A. Regulation of reactive oxygen species and genomic stability in hematopoietic stem cells. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2008; **10**: 1883-1894 [PMID: 18627347 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2008.2114]

32 **Toyokuni S**. Iron as a target of chemoprevention for longevity in humans. *Free Radic Res* 2011; **45**: 906-917 [PMID: 21615276 DOI: 10.3109/10715762.2011.564170]

33 **Ye SF**, Hou ZQ, Zhang QQ. Protective effects of Phellinus linteus extract against iron overload-mediated oxidative stress in cultured rat hepatocytes. *Phytother Res* 2007; **21**: 948-953 [PMID: 17602436 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.2182]

34 **Devi SL**, Anuradha CV. Oxidative and nitrosative stress in experimental rat liver fibrosis: Protective effect of taurine. *Environ Toxicol Pharmacol* 2010; **29**: 104-110 [PMID: 21787590 DOI: 10.1016/j.etap.2009.11.005]

35 **Chung KY**, Lee SJ, Chung SM, Lee MY, Bae ON, Chung JH. Generation of free radical by interaction of iron with thiols in human plasma and its possible significance. *Thromb Res* 2005; **116**: 157-164 [PMID: 15907531 DOI: 10.1016/j.thromres.2004.11.021]

36 **Dabbagh AJ**, Mannion T, Lynch SM, Frei B. The effect of iron overload on rat plasma and liver oxidant status in vivo. *Biochem J* 1994; **300** (Pt 3): 799-803 [PMID: 8010963]

37 **Yoshida H**, Sasaki K, Hirowatari Y, Kurosawa H, Sato N, Furutani N, Tada N. Increased serum iron may contribute to enhanced oxidation of low-density lipoprotein in smokers in part through changes in lipoxygenase and catalase. *Clin Chim Acta* 2004; **345**: 161-170 [PMID: 15193991 DOI: 10.1016/j.cccn.2004.03.018]

38 **Thephinlap C**, Ounjaijean S, Khansuwan U, Fucharoen S, Porter JB, Srichairatanakool S. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate and epicatechin-3-gallate from green tea decrease plasma non-transferrin bound iron and erythrocyte oxidative stress. *Med Chem* 2007; **3**: 289-296 [PMID: 17504202 DOI: 10.2174/157340607780620608]

39 **Arruda MM**, Mecabo G, Rodrigues CA, Matsuda SS, Rabelo IB, Figueiredo MS. Antioxidant vitamins C and E supplementation increases markers of haemolysis in sickle cell anaemia patients: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Br J Haematol* 2013; **160**: 688-700 [PMID: 23278176 DOI: 10.1111/bjh.12185]

P- Reviewer: Erikson KM, Koch TR, Naito Y **S- Editor**: Wen LL
L- Editor: AmEditor **E- Editor**: Wu HL

ISSN 2220-315X (online)

World Journal of *Experimental Medicine*

World J Exp Med 2014 November 20; 4(4): 46-67

Volume End

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJEM

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 4 November 20, 2014

REVIEW

World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Volume 4 Number 4 November 20, 2014

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Experimental Medicine

ISSN
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 20, 2011

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Experimental Medicine
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx

PUBLICATION DATE
November 20, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315x/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i4.46

World J Exp Med 2014 November 20; 4(4): 46-57
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

Aging: A mitochondrial DNA perspective, critical analysis and an update

Inna N Shokolenko, Glenn L Wilson, Mikhail F Alexeyev

Inna N Shokolenko, Biomedical Sciences Department, Patt Capps Covey College of Allied Health Professions, University of South Alabama, Mobile, AL 36688-0002, United States
Glenn L Wilson, Mikhail F Alexeyev, Department of Cell Biology and Neuroscience, University of South Alabama, Mobile, AL 36688, United States
Mikhail F Alexeyev, Pharmacology and Center for Lung Biology, University of South Alabama, Mobile, AL 36688, United States
Author contributions: Shokolenko IN and Alexeyev MF conceived the manuscript, collected the literature, wrote, edited and revised the manuscript; Wilson GL conceived the manuscript, edited and revised the manuscript.
Supported by The National Institutes of Health grants No. ES03456, PO1 HL66299, and No. OD010944
Correspondence to: Mikhail F Alexeyev, PhD, Department of Cell Biology and Neuroscience, University of South Alabama, 5851 USA Dr. North, MSB1201, Mobile, AL 36688, United States. malexeye@southalabama.edu
Telephone: +1-251-4606789 Fax: +1-251-4606771
Received: May 27, 2014 Revised: July 15, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: November 20, 2014

Abstract

The mitochondrial theory of aging, a mainstream theory of aging which once included accumulation of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) damage by reactive oxygen species (ROS) as its cornerstone, has been increasingly losing ground and is undergoing extensive revision due to its inability to explain a growing body of emerging data. Concurrently, the notion of the central role for mtDNA in the aging process is being met with increased skepticism. Our progress in understanding the processes of mtDNA maintenance, repair, damage, and degradation in response to damage has largely refuted the view of mtDNA as being particularly susceptible to ROS-mediated mutagenesis due to its lack of "protective" histones and reduced complement of available DNA repair pathways. Recent research on mitochondrial ROS production has led to the appreciation that mitochondria, even *in vitro*, produce much less ROS than previously thought, automatically leading to a decreased expectation of physiologically achievable levels of mtDNA damage. New evidence suggests that both experimentally induced oxidative stress and radiation therapy result in very low levels of mtDNA mutagenesis. Recent advances provide evidence against the existence of the "vicious" cycle of mtDNA damage and ROS production. Meta-studies reveal no longevity benefit of increased antioxidant defenses. Simultaneously, exciting new observations from both comparative biology and experimental systems indicate that increased ROS production and oxidative damage to cellular macromolecules, including mtDNA, can be associated with extended longevity. A novel paradigm suggests that increased ROS production in aging may be the result of adaptive signaling rather than a detrimental byproduct of normal respiration that drives aging. Here, we review issues pertaining to the role of mtDNA in aging.

Key words: Mitochondrial DNA; Reactive oxygen species; DNA damage; DNA repair; Somatic mtDNA mutations; Antioxidants; Reactive oxygen species signaling; Mitochondrial DNA degradation; Electron transport; Aging

Core tip: The notion of reactive oxygen species (ROS) -mediated accumulation of mutations in mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) as a driving force behind aging is increasingly losing ground forcing a revision of the Mitochondrial Theory of Aging. While mitochondrial involvement remains in the center of attention of aging research, the focus is shifting from mtDNA mutations to mitochondrial physiology. The positive effect of increased ROS production on longevity is increasingly viewed as evidence that increased ROS production in aging may be adaptive rather than maladaptive. This novel paradigm explains failure of antioxidants to delay aging in clinical trials.

Shokolenko IN, Wilson GL, Alexeyev MF. Aging: A mitochondrial DNA perspective, critical analysis and an update. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(4): 46-57 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i4/46.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i4.46

INTRODUCTION

While there is no universally accepted definition of the aging process, it is often defined as changes (mostly detrimental) that occur in organisms during their lifespan. Most researchers agree that aging is: (1) universal; (2) intrinsic (*i.e.*, "built-in"); (3) progressive; (4) deleterious; and (5) irreversible. The universality of the aging process suggests the existence of an equally universal mechanism or mechanisms that govern it. Over time, different aging theories proposed a variety of such basic mechanisms. Perhaps the most popular of these theories was (and, arguably, remains) the Free Radical/Mitochondrial Theory of Aging (henceforth MTA) first proposed by Harman[1] in 1956. Initially, this theory simply postulated that aging results from the accumulation of oxygen free radical [reactive oxygen species (ROS)] damage to cellular components, including nucleic acids[1]. Over the years, the theory was refined by, first, the identification of mitochondria as both the source and the target of the ROS[2], and, then, the identification of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) as a tally-keeper for the damage. The latter concept was introduced by Fleming *et al*[3] and Miquel *et al*[4,5], and is of particular importance because it provided an answer to critics who questioned the capability of other mitochondrial macromolecules such as lipids, proteins, or RNA to accumulate longitudinal damage over an organism's lifetime. Unlike damage to other macromolecules, damage to mtDNA can be converted to point mutations and deletions, which can be transmitted to and accumulated in daughter molecules through the process of replication, enabling deterioration of the integrity of hereditary information over time. It is this damage-sustaining capacity of mtDNA that makes it central to discussions of aging, and it is this property that will be the focus of the current review. Over the years, the MTA underwent many revisions to accommodate new experimental evidence, and thus, there are almost as many versions of it as there are investigators. As Jacobs observed more than a decade ago, "opponents of the hypothesis (MTA) tend to define it in such a narrow and extreme way that it is almost self-evidently falsified by generally accepted facts. Conversely, its proponents are liable to state the theory in such a vague and general way that it is virtually unfalsifiable experimentally"[6]. Here, we review our current knowledge of mtDNA maintenance as it pertains to the MTA, which consists of the following basic tenets: (1) Mitochondria are a significant source of ROS in the cell; (2) Mitochondrial ROS inflict damage on mtDNA; (3) Oxidative mtDNA damage results in mutations; (4) mtDNA mutations lead to the synthesis of defective polypeptide components of the electron transport chain (ETC); (5) Incorporation of these defective subunits into the ETC leads to a further increase in ROS production, initiating a "vicious" cycle of ROS production, mtDNA mutations, and mitochondrial dysfunction (Figure 1). This tenet appears to be the most controversial, and is no longer recognized as a part of the MTA by many researchers[7]; and (6) Eventually, mtDNA mutations, ROS production and cellular damage by ROS reach levels incompatible with life.

Some recent experimental evidence has called into question the validity of the MTA, prompting its reevaluation (see *e.g.*,[7]). Here, we present a historical perspective of our views on the role of mtDNA in aging and update our earlier critical review of the topic[8].

MTDNA

MtDNA (Figure 2) in mammals is a circular molecule that encodes 37 genes, including 2 rRNAs, 22 tRNAs, and 13 polypeptides. All 13 polypeptides are components of the oxidative phosphorylation (OXPHOS) system. They are encoded using a non-standard genetic code, which requires its own translational machinery separate from that of the nucleus. Two rRNAs and 22 tRNAs involved in this mitochondrial protein synthesis are also encoded by mtDNA. Mitochondrial DNA is densely packed into nucleoids, each containing as few as 1-2 mtDNA molecules[9].

A significant body of indirect evidence implicating mtDNA in longevity was contributed by studies on the inheritance patterns of longevity, which suggested possible cytoplasmic (mitochondrial) inheritance[10], and from studies which revealed the association of some mtDNA variations with longevity[11-14]. However, other studies indicate that these associations are weak[15]. The latest large-scale study on mtDNA and aging suggests that the relationship between mtDNA variants and longevity may be much more complex, and that while mutations in the OXPHOS complex I may beneficially affect longevity, the coincidence of mutations in complexes I and Ⅲ as well as the simultaneous presence of mutations in complexes I and V are detrimental. These more complex relationships escape detection by haplogroup analysis and require sequencing of complete mitochondrial genomes[16]. Overall, these findings indirectly support the idea that mtDNA variations may contribute to longevity.

MITOCHONDRIA ARE A SIGNIFICANT SOURCE OF ROS IN CELLS

ROS generation by mitochondria

In the course of their migration through the respiratory chain, electrons can "escape" and participate in the single-electron reduction of oxygen resulting in the formation of the superoxide radical ($O_2^{\bullet -}$ Eq. 1). The detailed overview of this process is presented elsewhere[8,17]. While the exact magnitude of ROS production *in vivo* re-

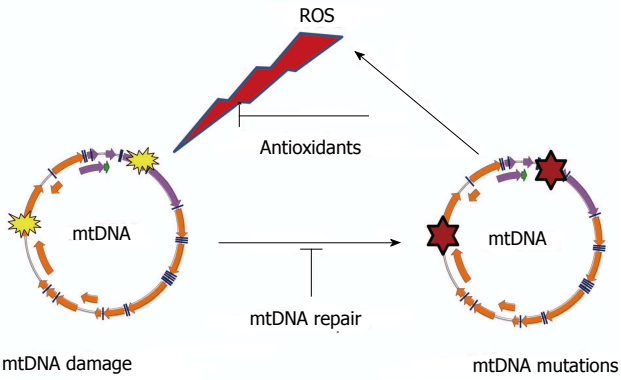


Figure 1 "Vicious cycle" of reactive oxygen species production, mitochondrial DNA damage, mitochondrial DNA mutagenesis and further reactive oxygen species production. The cycle implies an exponential growth of reactive oxygen species (ROS) production and mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) mutagenesis.

mains debatable, we and others repeatedly argued[8,17] that the values of 1%-2% of total oxygen consumption[18] frequently cited in the literature are not reflective of physiological conditions and that the real rates are much lower.

ROS are produced by multiple sites in mitochondria[19]. Sites other than complexes I and Ⅲ are rarely mentioned in the context of aging. However, recent data suggest that some of these sites may have higher ROS production capacity than respiratory chain complex Ⅰ, which is often viewed as a major source of matrix superoxide production[20]. Moreover, it was argued that the endoplasmic reticulum and peroxisomes have a greater capacity to produce ROS than mitochondria do[21]. Another important consideration is that O_2•- produced by the mitochondrial respiratory chain inactivates aconitase, thus suppressing the Krebs cycle and reducing supply of NADH and $FADH_2$ to the respiratory chain. This can reduce electron flow through ETC, lower the reduction of ETC complexes, and diminish the production of O_2•-[22,23]. Thus, O_2•- production by ETC may be regulated by a negative feedback loop. Finally, actively respiring mitochondria may consume more ROS than they are capable of producing[24].

Mitochondrial ROS neutralization

ETC-generated ROS are detoxified through a two-step process. First, O_2•- is converted to H_2O_2 either spontaneously, or with the help of superoxide dismutases (Eq. 2). Two superoxide dismutases were described in mitochondria: SOD2 in the matrix and SOD1 in the intermembrane space. Interestingly, there is evidence of SOD1 activation by O_2•-[25]. The relative stability and membrane permeability of H_2O_2 ensure its ready access to mtDNA, yet like O_2•- this ROS is unable to efficiently react with DNA[8]. Only when H_2O_2 undergoes Fenton chemistry in the presence of transition metal ions (Eq. 3) is it converted to the extremely reactive hydroxyl radical. This ROS can efficiently damage mtDNA and other mitochondrial components[26,27]. At the second step, H_2O_2 in the mitochondrial matrix is detoxified by peroxiredoxins Ⅲ and Ⅴ (Prx Ⅲ and Prx Ⅴ, Eq. 4 and 5, respectively[28]) and by glutathione peroxidase 1 (GPx1, Eq. 6). Of the eight known GPx isoforms, this one is targeted to the mitochondrial matrix[29]. Another isoform, GPx4, is involved in detoxification of the mitochondrial membrane hydroperoxides[30] and is relevant due to the close association between mtDNA and the inner mitochondrial membrane. Prx Ⅲ is about 30-fold more abundant in mitochondria than GPx 1[31]. It is generally believed that catalase does not localize to mitochondria[32]. Therefore, GPx 1, and Prx Ⅲ and Ⅴ appear to be the main contributors to H_2O_2 detoxification in the mitochondrial matrix.

$O_2 + e^- \rightarrow O_2^{\bullet -}$ (Eq. 1)

$2\ O_2^{\bullet -} + 2\ H^+ \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$ (Eq. 2)

$Fe^{2+} + H_2O_2 \rightarrow Fe^{3+} + {\bullet}OH + OH^-$ (Eq. 3)

$H_2O_2 + 2\text{Prx Ⅲ}\ (SH)_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + \text{Prx Ⅲ}\ (SH)\text{-S-S}(SH)\text{Prx Ⅲ}$ (Eq. 4)

$H_2O_2 + \text{Prx Ⅴ}\ (SH)_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + \text{Prx Ⅴ}\ (S\text{-}S)$ (Eq. 5)

$H_2O_2 + 2GSH \rightarrow GS\text{-}SG + 2H_2O$ (Eq. 6)

Remarkably, the thioredoxin/peroxiredoxin system is capable of detoxifying extramitochondrial H_2O_2 in a respiration-dependent manner, providing evidence that mitochondrial OXPHOS is involved not only in the production of ROS, but also in their detoxification, and raising the question of whether mitochondria *in vivo* are a net source or a net sink of ROS[24].

MTDNA DAMAGE BY ROS

The reaction of O_2•- with non-radicals is spin forbidden[33-37]. In biological systems, this means that the main reactions of O_2•- are with itself (dismutation) or with another biological radical, such as nitric oxide. Therefore, direct reactions of O_2•- with mtDNA are unlikely. This ROS is far more likely to undergo dismutation to H_2O_2 (Eq. 2). As indicated above, H_2O_2 in the presence of transition metal ions, in particular Fe^{2+} and Cu^+, can undergo Fenton chemistry to form the extremely reactive •OH. Mitochondria are rich in iron, as many mitochondrial enzymes possess heme groups and iron-sulfur clusters in their active centers, and this abundance of iron may favor •OH production[38]. Therefore, it has been argued that mitochondria may be particularly susceptible to •OH -mediated oxidation, which plays a major role in DNA oxidation[39]. In this respect, it is important to note that mitochondrial iron is not free, but chelated (bound). Some experimental evidence does support the availability of chelated iron for Fenton-type reactions[40,41], and it is also true that iron chelators like desferrioxamine can efficiently suppress DNA mutagenesis by Fenton chemistry *in vitro*[42]. However, there is still a need for studies that could directly assess the ability of the iron bound in mitochondrial heme- and Fe-S proteins to promote generation of •OH.

Is mtDNA more sensitive to damage?

The mitochondrial genome accumulates germline mutations approximately one order of magnitude faster than

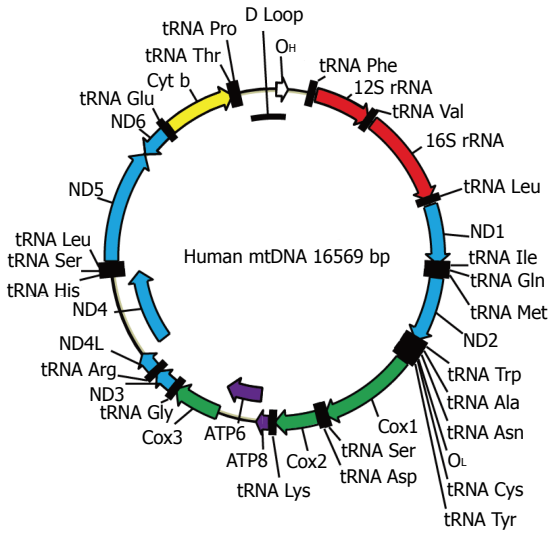


Figure 2 The map of human mitochondrial DNA. OH and OL: Origins of heavy and light strand replication, respectively; ND1-ND6: Subunits of NADH dehydrogenase (ETC complex I) subunits 1 through 6; COX1-COX3: Subunits of cytochrome oxidase subunits 1 through 3 (ETC complex IV); ATP6 and ATP8: Subunits 6 and 8 of mitochondrial ATPase (complex V); Cyt b: Cytochrome b (complex III); ETC: Electron transport chain.

nuclear DNA (nDNA)[43-45]. To evaluate relative accumulation of somatic mutations in nDNA *vs* mtDNA, we used 6×10^{-8} per nucleotide per cell division as an upper estimate for the rate of nDNA mutagenesis (8). Considering that the number of cells in the human body is 3.72×10^{13} (9), which roughly corresponds to 45 cell divisions starting with a fertilized egg, we arrive at $6 \times 45 \times 10^{-8} = 2.7 \times 10^{-6}$ mutations per base pair for the somatic nDNA mutation burden in an aged human, provided that there is no further nDNA mutagenesis after reaching adulthood. The somatic mtDNA mutation burden has been recently estimated to be 1.9×10^{-5} (10), which is less than 1 order of magnitude higher than the 2.7×10^{-6} just calculated for nDNA. mtDNA is turned over with half-lives of 10-30 d in different tissues (11), and therefore the difference in the rates of spontaneous somatic mtDNA mutagenesis between mtDNA and nDNA on per doubling basis may be even smaller than 1 order of magnitude [because in a 70-year-old human mtDNA has replicated on average (assuming a half-life of 30 d) at least $12/2 \times 70 + 45 = 465$ times compared to 45 times for nDNA, not counting repair synthesis]. Therefore, somatic mutations may accumulate at the same per doubling rate in nDNA as they do in mtDNA, while the cumulative burden of mutations in mtDNA may be one order of magnitude higher than that in nDNA in a 70-year-old individual.

In the literature, three properties of the mitochondrial genome are frequently cited as responsible for this faster rate of mtDNA mutagenesis: (1) Its proximity to the source of ROS (ETC); (2) Its lack of "protective" histones; and (3) A limited repertoire of DNA repair pathways available in mitochondria.

It has been argued, however, that proximity to the source of ROS, by itself, is unable to explain the higher mutation rate of mtDNA, and that some available experimental evidence directly contradicts the notion of the protective role of histones[8]. Observations that mtDNA is covered by TFAM[46] and that at least some prominent oxidative DNA lesions are repaired more efficiently in mitochondria than they are in the nucleus[47] also contradict the above arguments.

Moreover, mitochondria evolved a unique way to deal with excessive or irreparable damage: a pathway for degradation or abandonment of damaged molecules (Figure 3)[48,49]. This pathway is enabled by the high redundancy of mtDNA (hundreds to thousands of copies per cell). MtDNA degradation has been reported in response to both oxidative stress[50-52] and to enzymatically-induced abasic sites[53]. It also has been suggested that substrates for the Nucleotide Excision Repair pathway, which has not been detected in mitochondria, are also mitigated through mtDNA turnover[54,55].

If three of the above mentioned rationales in support of mtDNA's higher susceptibility to (oxidative) damage and mutagenesis are not satisfactorily supported by experimental evidence, what then is the basis for the frequently cited higher (compared to nDNA) susceptibility of mtDNA to oxidative stress? Here, one ought to make a distinction between damage to DNA bases-which may lead, upon replication, to point mutations-and damage to the sugar phosphate backbone. The first report comparing the content of the oxidative DNA base lesion, 8-oxodG, in nDNA *vs* mtDNA indicated that mtDNA may accumulate up to 15 times higher levels of this DNA oxidation product[56]. However, it was later established that this dramatic difference was a technical artefact[57]. Independent studies since confirmed that levels of 8-oxodG are similar in nDNA and mtDNA[58-60]. As far as sugar-phosphate backbone damage is concerned, Yakes and Van Houten[61] reported that in mouse embryonic fibroblasts exposed to H_2O_2, mtDNA accumulates more polymerase-blocking lesions than nDNA. These lesions are predominantly single- and double-strand breaks (SSB and DSB) as well as abasic sites with minor contribution from base modifications such as thymine glycol[50]. However, sugar-phosphate backbone damage may induce mtDNA turnover, thus preventing mutagenesis, rather than inducing it[48,50].

CAN MITOCHONDRIAL ROS INDUCE RELEVANT LEVELS OF MTDNA MUTATIONS?

Experimental evidence in support of the mutagenicity of mitochondrially produced ROS remains scarce. There are more studies attempting to assign oxidative stress as a cause of the observed mtDNA mutations than there are studies of mutations induced in mtDNA by experimental exposure of biological systems to oxidative stress. We were unable to detect a statistically significant increase in the level of mtDNA mutations in cells chronically treated with rotenone, which induces ROS production by inhibit-

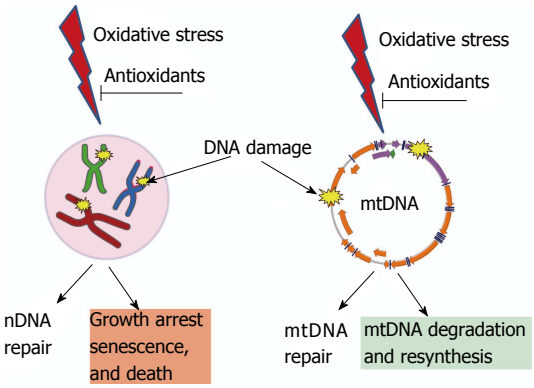


Figure 3 Consequences of unrepaired DNA damage in the nucleus and in the mitochondria. Oxidative damage induces lesions in both nDNA (left) and mtDNA (right). Both nuclei and mitochondria possess DNA repair systems to deal with these lesions. However, cellular consequences of unrepaired damage to nDNA and mtDNA are different. While persistent damage in nDNA results in the activation of cell cycle checkpoints, growth arrest, senescence and death. In contrast, mtDNA molecules with unrepairable damage are simply degraded and new molecules are synthesized using intact molecules as templates. This figure uses Servier elements available under Creative Commons license (155).

ing ETC complex I , and in cells repeatedly exposed to damaging levels of extracellular H_2O_2[50], which suggests that mtDNA is fairly resistant to ROS-induced mutagenesis. Similarly, recent studies indicate that mtDNA mutagenesis is not increased in flies with inactivated SOD and OGG1, an enzyme involved in the repair of oxidatively damaged DNA[62]. In aqueous environments, ionizing radiation induces DNA-damaging ROS: most importantly, the highly reactive •OH. With this in mind, Guo *et al*[63] evaluated 44 DNA blood samples from 18 mothers and 26 children. All mothers underwent radiation therapy for cancer in their childhood, and radiation doses to their ovaries were determined based on medical records and computational models. Sequencing of the entire mitochondrial genome in these patients revealed that the mother's age at sample collection was positively correlated with mtDNA heteroplasmy, a condition in which the cell possesses more than one mtDNA variant (the mitochondrial equivalent of nuclear heterozygosity). However, Guo *et al*[63] failed to detect any significant difference in single nucleotide polymorphisms between mother and offspring. Also, there was no significant correlation between radiation dose to the ovaries and the level of heteroplasmic mtDNA mutations among mothers and children. Therefore, radiation therapy-induced ROS do not appear to contribute, in a substantial way, to mtDNA mutagenesis[63]. This finding is significant because radiation therapy, by design, produces levels of ROS that are much higher than those observed under physiological conditions and therefore have a higher potential to overwhelm cellular antioxidant defenses and produce oxidative damage.

PROPERTIES OF AGING-ASSOCIATED MTDNA MUTATIONS

It is of note that even though age-associated mtDNA mutations are randomly distributed around the genome, there is some bias for the type of mtDNA mutations observed in aging in mitotic *vs* post-mitotic tissues. In mitotic tissues, most common type of mtDNA mutations identified is base substitutions. In contrast, large-scale-deletions are more commonly identified in post-mitotic tissues[64]. Among point mutations in dividing cells, transitions dominate the spectrum (90%) with the remaining fraction of mutations almost equally divided between transversions and small deletions. The frequency of non-synonymous (65.4%) and frameshift/premature termination codons (16.5%) in aging cells is significantly elevated as compared with variants found in the general population (34% and 0.6%, respectively). Also, the predicted pathogenicity of aging-associated mtDNA mutations is higher than that of mutations in the general population[64]. This suggests that human somatic cells, unlike germline cells[65], lack mechanisms to protect them from the accumulation of deleterious mutations.

The advent of Next Generation Sequencing enabled cost-effective interrogation of large numbers of mtDNA bases for mutations. These analyses revealed a minimal contribution of G > T transversions to the spectrum of aging-associated mutations. G > T transversions can be induced by 8-oxodG, a frequently used measure of oxidative DNA damage. This has led some investigators to conclude that oxidative damage does not contribute to aging-associated mtDNA mutagenesis[64,66]. Some observations, however, caution against this interpretation: (1) The most frequent base substitution induced by oxidative stress is a G > A transition[67,68]. This is the most prominent base change observed in mtDNA from aged tissues[66]; (2) 8-oxodG in mammalian cells can also induce G > A transitions[69], and therefore the available evidence does not allow for the complete exclusion of the contribution of this lesion to mtDNA mutagenesis in aging; (3) Cumulative evidence suggests that oxidative stress can induce all possible base substitutions, both *in vitro* and *in vivo*[68], cautioning against basing a conclusion regarding the involvement of oxidative stress in age-related mtDNA mutagenesis solely on an increase in the frequency of G > T transversions. Therefore, in the absence of studies that determine the mutational signature of ROS in mtDNA, any mutation can be interpreted as resulting from oxidative stress. And, conversely, no particular mtDNA mutation can be used, with confidence, as evidence of oxidative stress; (4) It has been shown that oxidative DNA damage does not necessarily lead to an increase in G > T transversions. For example, in DNA oxidatively damaged *in vitro* and passed through bacterial cells, the frequency of G > C transversions was increased, whereas the frequency of G > T transversions was actually decreased as compared to that of untreated DNA[70]. In an almost identical experiment, the frequency of base substitutions at A/T pairs in oxidatively damaged DNA was elevated, whereas the frequency G > T transversions remained unchanged after passing damaged DNA through mammalian cells[42]; and (5) The specific spectrum of oxidative-damage induced DNA mutations is determined, to a great extent, by the particu-

lar properties of the experimental system used (reviewed in[67]). At present, we lack a precise understanding of how oxidative mtDNA lesions are processed by mitochondria to produce mutations. Therefore, no definitive conclusion regarding the contribution of oxidative stress to the spectrum of aging-associated mtDNA mutations can be drawn from the absence of an increase in G > T transversions.

WHAT IS THE FUNCTIONAL SIGNIFICANCE OF AGING-ASSOCIATED MTDNA MUTATIONS?

Given that mtDNA mutations accumulate with aging, are they a cause of (1) mitochondrial dysfunction and/or (2) aging? It is well established that mitochondrial function is only compromised when the fraction of cellular copies of a given mtDNA-encoded gene affected by a given mutation exceeds a certain threshold specific to the mutation (and tissue). This threshold phenomenon can be mediated, at least in part, by intra- and intermitochondrial complementation[71-73]. It is usually accepted that this threshold is 60% to 70% of mutant mtDNA in chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia and may be close to 95% in the syndromes of mitochondrial encephalopathy, myopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes, and myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers[74]. Therefore, generally, more than 60% of cellular copies for a given mitochondrial gene have to be affected by a pathogenic mutation in order to observe phenotypic manifestation of the mutation[75]. In aging, mtDNA mutations are random, which brings about two caveats. First, not all aging-associated mutations are detrimental. Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code, 25% of mutations will not alter the amino acid sequence of the encoded protein (68.8% of mtDNA encodes for proteins), and others, while causing an amino acid or nucleotide substitution, will not negatively affect the function of the encoded protein or RNA molecule. Second, these mutations are not localized to a particular gene, but rather are randomly distributed among 37 mitochondrially-encoded genes. This means that in order to affect 60% of cellular copies of the largest mtDNA-encoded polypeptide MT-ND5 (which spans 11% of the mitochondrial genome), each mtDNA molecule has to carry on average 0.6/0.11 = 5.45 mutations. For smaller genes, this number will be proportionally higher. Since there is no experimental evidence that supports a selective advantage for deleterious point mutations, both of these caveats suggest that the presence of several aging-associated mutations per mtDNA molecule is required before impairment of mitochondrial function can be observed. These levels are indeed achieved in tissues of mtDNA mutator mice[76,77], but not in naturally aged tissues of experimental animals or humans. Based on the reported frequency of mtDNA mutations, it can be calculated that in mice aged 24-33 mo, mutations affect as little as 20% of mtDNA molecules[78]. Similar calculations using reported values for humans aged 75-99 years[66] suggest that only about 32% of mtDNA molecules are affected by mutations. Therefore, it is highly unlikely that the relatively low mutation loads observed in naturally aged tissues[50,79,80] can account for the observed age-related measurable decline in mitochondrial function and, by extension, cause aging, provided that these mutations are maintained in a heteroplasmic state. Intriguingly, though, some studies indicate that the fraction of respiratory chain-deficient colonocytes in aging mammalian tissues increases after 35 years, and by 70 years of age, up to a third of colonocytes can be respiration-negative. This can be explained by a random genetic drift model. According to this model, multiple rounds of replication may result in the clonal expansion of random mtDNA molecules, leading to a loss of heteroplasmy[81]. In humans, this model predicts that clonal expansion may take decades to occur. Therefore, random drift may provide a satisfactory explanation for the mechanism of respiratory dysfunction observed in aged tissues provided that it can be demonstrated that cell types other than colon epithelium accumulate similar levels of clonally expanded mutations. The random genetic drift in colon epithelium, the tissue in which this phenomenon is best understood, however, appears to be highly heterogeneous, and its extent does not correlate well with chronological age between individuals. For example, a 75-year-old individual may have a lower percentage of respiration-deficient crypts than a 45-year-old[82]. This heterogeneity is inconsistent with the steady and relatively uniform process of aging, and, therefore, argues against random genetic drift being the sole or even a major driving force of aging. It is also unclear whether clonally expanded somatic mtDNA mutations can drive aging in short-lived species. For example, in human colon such mutations are not detectable until about 30 years of age[82]. Can clonally expanded mtDNA mutations explain aging in *Caenorhabditis*. elegans whose lifespan is only 2-3 wk? It is implausible that mtDNA in this organism turns over so much faster to allow for clonal expansion comparable to that observed in humans. Therefore, clonally expanded mtDNA mutations are more likely to be a contributing, rather than driving, factor of aging.

IS THERE EVIDENCE FOR THE EXISTENCE OF THE "VICIOUS" CYCLE?

As noted above, "vicious" cycle is the most contentious part of the MTA. The main premise of the "vicious" cycle hypothesis is the existence of a feed-forward cycle of ROS production and mtDNA mutation. That is: (1) increased ROS production in aging leads to increased mtDNA mutagenesis; and (2) increased mtDNA mutation loads result in increased mitochondrial dysfunction and ROS production. The first part of this premise appears intuitive and plausible. Indeed, no antioxidant defense or DNA repair system works with 100% efficiency, and an increase in ROS will inevitably lead to an increase in mtDNA damage and mutagenesis, however little. The

second part of this premise, however, is more contentious. While observations in patients with mitochondrial disease may partially support the notion of increased ROS production in response to increased mtDNA mutation loads, these observations, paradoxically, also refute this notion. First, while some pathogenic mtDNA mutations result in increased ROS production[83,84], this is not a universal property of mutations in mtDNA. This point is best illustrated by observations made in "mito-mice" (mice that age prematurely due accumulation of random mtDNA mutations): these mice accumulate mtDNA mutation loads exceeding those observed in normal aging by more than one order of magnitude, and still this increase does not result in elevated levels of ROS production[76,77,85]. Thus, the majority of mtDNA point mutations will not affect mitochondrial ROS production regardless of their levels. Second, no accelerated aging or increase in mtDNA mutagenesis rates were reported in patients with mitochondrial diseases which are characterized by increased ROS production. Therefore, while increased ROS production is expected to increase the rate of mtDNA mutagenesis, this increase may not be physiologically relevant or experimentally detectable. This second point is relevant to the discussion above regarding threshold levels of mtDNA mutations.

Moraes *et al*[42] argued that if a "vicious" cycle played an important role in the accumulation of mtDNA deletions in somatic tissues, patients with compromised OXPHOS should accumulate mtDNA deletions at an accelerated rate. Their experiments did not support this prediction, leading Moraes *et al*[42] to the conclusion that a "vicious" cycle is not likely to play an important role in the accumulation of age-related mtDNA deletions[86].

To reconcile MTA with the new evidence, Gustavo Barja has put forward a new version of it that does not include the "vicious" cycle. Barja argues that the damage amplification step provided by the "vicious" cycle is unnecessary for the validity of the MTA[7].

ROS PRODUCTION AND LONGEVITY

It is predicted by the MTA that higher ROS production should lead to increased cellular oxidative stress, which should result in increased damage to cellular macromolecules including mtDNA, and ultimately lead to reduced longevity. Conversely, all other conditions being equal, lower ROS production and oxidative stress are expected to be associated with increased longevity. Since the principal contribution of the mtDNA to the aging process, within the framework of the MTA, is through the effects of mtDNA instability on cellular ROS production, it follows that an examination of the role of ROS in aging would be informative. Indeed, the lack of unequivocal evidence establishing a causative role for ROS in aging makes alterations in mtDNA, which are purportedly induced by ROS and contribute to aging by increasing ROS production, irrelevant.

Evidence from animal models

Early on, comparative biology studies established a positive correlation between body size and longevity. More detailed biochemical studies revealed an inverse correlation between mitochondrial ROS production and mtDNA damage on one hand and longevity on the other, across different biological taxa (reviewed in ref[7]), which is in agreement with the MTA. Unexpectedly, and conflicting with the predictions of the MTA, antioxidant defenses also correlated negatively with longevity[87]. Perhaps not surprisingly, an extension of this analysis to other species revealed that in many species, long lifespans defied explanation by the tenets of the MTA. One of the most striking examples in this category is that of the naked mole-rat. These animals, about the size of mice, live almost 8 times longer than mice[88,89]. Strikingly, these animals have very unremarkable antioxidant defenses: their glutathione peroxidase levels are 70 times lower than in mice, resembling those of knockout animals[88]. In the absence of compensatory upregulation of other antioxidant systems, this, predictably, leads to higher levels of oxidative damage in these animals: at least 10-fold higher levels of urinary isoprostanes (a marker of oxidative stress), eightfold increased levels of 8-oxodG (increased DNA damage) in the liver accompanied by reduced urinary excretion of 8-oxodG (reduced DNA repair), and high cellular (especially, mitochondrial) protein carbonyls were reported in this study[89]. The fact that naked mole-rats live longer than mice despite this increased oxidative burden (especially in mtDNA and mitochondrial proteins) strongly argues against the role of oxidative damage as a key determinant of longevity.

Another line of evidence against the MTA comes from studies on C. elegans. This organism has five genes encoding different isoforms of the SOD, an enzyme catalyzing the first step in the detoxification of superoxide (Eq. 2). Inactivation of the SOD isoforms in this organism either individually or in groups of three (including inactivation of all mitochondrial isoforms), failed to decrease the lifespan[90]. Instead, inactivation of *sod-2* led to increased longevity, which was associated with increased oxidative damage to proteins. Moreover, an *sod-2* mutation further increased lifespan of long-lived clk-1 mutants. Finally, the same group has recently inactivated all five sod genes in C. elegans and demonstrated that while animals completely lacking any SOD activity are more sensitive to multiple stressors, they have normal longevity[91]. Similarly, inactivation of the major mitochondrial antioxidant system by mutating Prx Ⅲ (Eq. 4) decreased overall fitness in this organism, but failed to affect the lifespan[92].

In the fruit fly, somatic mtDNA mutagenesis was not affected by inactivation of SOD either alone, or in combination with OGG1, an enzyme involved in repair of oxidative DNA damage, even though lifespan was affected[62]. These observations suggest a minimal contribution of oxidative stress to age-related somatic mtDNA mutagenesis.

Mclk1$^{+/-}$ mice heterozygous for the key enzyme in the biosynthesis of ubiquinone, an electron transporter

and mitochondrial membrane antioxidant, demonstrate extended longevity. This genetic defect is accompanied by an impairment of the ETC and by increased mitochondrial, but not cytoplasmic, oxidative stress[93]. Inactivation of the homologous gene *clk-1* in C. elegans also resulted in increased longevity. This led the authors to hypothesize that an increase in the generation of mitochondrial ROS might accompany aging not because ROS play a causal role in this process but rather because ROS stimulate protective and restorative processes that help to counteract age-dependent damage[94,95].

Track record of antioxidant-based life-extending strategies

It is predicted by the MTA that reducing intracellular ROS production should reduce damage to macromolecules, including mtDNA, and ultimately increase longevity. As a result, numerous interventional studies have been performed in both vertebrate and invertebrate models. Treatments in these studies typically included either lifelong supplementation with nonenzymatic antioxidants or genetic manipulation of intracellular levels of enzymatic antioxidants. These studies produced inconclusive results: while in some instances it was possible to achieve a modest increase in longevity, many studies revealed the lack of correlation, or even a negative correlation, between antioxidant defenses and lifespan (reviewed in ref[7]). In some instances, these studies produced different results in different species. For example, mitochondrial expression of catalase was reported to have no effect on the longevity of drosophila[96], but resulted in a modest (17%-21%) lifespan extension in mice[97]. In contrast, in C. elegans, a fivefold increase in longevity was reported for animals carrying two mutations (*daf-2 and clk-1*) in nDNA[98]. This suggests that nuclear genes play a pivotal role in determining longevity. To date, no manipulation of mtDNA or the systems involved in its replication, maintenance, or repair has produced comparable extension of the lifespan.

Howes[99] reviewed the results of antioxidant studies which involved more than 550000 human subjects, and concluded that "not only have antioxidants failed to stop disease and aging but also they may cause harm and mortality, which precipitated the stoppage of several large studies". Recent meta-studies support his findings: Bjelakovic *et al*[100] analyzed the results of 78 studies between 1977 and 2012, involving a total of 296707 participants, and concluded that antioxidant supplements neither reduce all-cause mortality nor extend lifespan, while some of them, such as beta carotene, vitamin E, and higher doses of vitamin A, may actually increase mortality[100]. The most direct interpretation of these findings in the context of the MTA as it pertains to mtDNA is that reduced oxidative damage to mtDNA does not extend longevity.

Caloric restriction (30%-40% reduction in caloric food intake without malnutrition) is frequently cited as the most reliable means of extending lifespan across diverse taxa and is frequently employed as a means to investigate the mechanisms of aging. Its effect is widely attributed to reduced ROS production and mtDNA damage[101]. However, in a recent survey of 41 laboratory mouse strains, 40% caloric restriction shortened lifespan in more strains than in which it lengthened it[102]. Similarly, a recent study by the National Institute of Aging revealed no beneficial effect of caloric restriction on longevity in primates[103,104].

CONCLUSION

Recently, there has been an emergence of experimental data challenging many aspects of the MTA as defined in the Introduction. This, in turn, has resulted in both a growing skepticism towards the role of mtDNA mutations in aging, and in the transformation of some of our views on mtDNA, ROS, and aging. Thus, the increased susceptibility of mtDNA to ROS-induced strand breaks (but not to oxidative base damage) is now viewed as a component of the mitochondria-specific mechanism for the maintenance of mtDNA integrity through abandonment and degradation of severely damaged mtDNA molecules, rather than as a mechanism for accelerated mtDNA mutagenesis (Figure 3). Also, we have begun to appreciate that increased ROS production in aging may represent evidence for adaptive signaling aimed at mitigating detrimental changes, rather than constituting an unwanted but unavoidable byproduct of respiration.

Even though its current status is controversial, it is the MTA that stimulated the research that advanced our understanding of aging and clarified the place of mtDNA in this process. While it is no longer plausible that mtDNA is either the sole or the main determinant of aging, epidemiological studies do still suggest a contribution of mtDNA variation to longevity[16]. Also, it is becoming increasingly obvious that maternally transmitted low levels of germline mtDNA mutations can have a significant impact on health and lifespan[105]. The random genetic drift theory[81] has the potential to reconcile the observed mitochondrial dysfunction in aged organs with the low average levels of mtDNA mutations in some tissues. These and other findings demonstrate that despite dramatic advances, our understanding of the role of mtDNA in aging remains incomplete. This incomplete understanding persists in large part due to our limited ability to manipulate mitochondria in a meaningful way. The lack of approaches to introduce defined base lesions into mtDNA impedes our progress in understanding the specifics of mitochondrial processing of oxidative DNA damage. This, in turn, limits our ability to deconvolute and interpret the spectrum of mtDNA mutations observed in aging.

In the near future there is great promise for further advances in our understanding of mtDNA's contribution to aging. The advent of Duplex Sequencing methodology now makes it possible to determine the mutational signature of oxidative stress in mitochondria, which is one

of the most important next steps in mtDNA research. The dire need for reliable markers of oxidative mtDNA damage is becoming increasingly obvious. Despite concerted efforts[106,107], detection of the widely used marker 8-oxodG remains variable between labs, which has resulted in contradictory reports: both a 20-fold increase[108] and no change[109] in 8-oxodG content in the mtDNA of OGG1 knockout animals have been reported. The development of methods for the determination of both the identity of mitochondrial ROS generated in vivo and the rates of their production would greatly aid in evaluating the interactions between mtDNA and ROS. Finally, a better understanding of the incidence, kinetics, and extent of random intracellular drift of mtDNA heteroplasmy in different tissues is needed for an accurate determination of its possible contribution to mitochondrial dysfunction in aging.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to Alexeeva O for critical reading of the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Harman D**. Aging: a theory based on free radical and radiation chemistry. *J Gerontol* 1956; **11**: 298-300 [PMID: 13332224]
2 **Harman D**. The biologic clock: the mitochondria? *J Am Geriatr Soc* 1972; **20**: 145-147 [PMID: 5016631]
3 **Fleming JE**, Miquel J, Cottrell SF, Yengoyan LS, Economos AC. Is cell aging caused by respiration-dependent injury to the mitochondrial genome? *Gerontology* 1982; **28**: 44-53 [PMID: 7037547]
4 **Miquel J**, Binnard R, Fleming JE. Role of metabolic rate and DNA-repair in Drosophila aging: implications for the mitochondrial mutation theory of aging. *Exp Gerontol* 1983; **18**: 167-171 [PMID: 6411485]
5 **Miquel J**, Economos AC, Fleming J, Johnson JE. Mitochondrial role in cell aging. *Exp Gerontol* 1980; **15**: 575-591 [PMID: 7009178]
6 **Jacobs HT**. The mitochondrial theory of aging: dead or alive? *Aging Cell* 2003; **2**: 11-17 [PMID: 12882330]
7 **Barja G**. Updating the mitochondrial free radical theory of aging: an integrated view, key aspects, and confounding concepts. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2013; **19**: 1420-1445 [PMID: 23642158 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2012.5148]
8 **Alexeyev MF**. Is there more to aging than mitochondrial DNA and reactive oxygen species? *FEBS J* 2009; **276**: 5768-5787 [PMID: 19796285 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-4658.2009.07269.x]
9 **Kukat C**, Wurm CA, Spåhr H, Falkenberg M, Larsson NG, Jakobs S. Super-resolution microscopy reveals that mammalian mitochondrial nucleoids have a uniform size and frequently contain a single copy of mtDNA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 13534-13539 [PMID: 21808029 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1109263108]
10 **Brand FN**, Kiely DK, Kannel WB, Myers RH. Family patterns of coronary heart disease mortality: the Framingham Longevity Study. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1992; **45**: 169-174 [PMID: 1573433]
11 **De Benedictis G**, Rose G, Carrieri G, De Luca M, Falcone E, Passarino G, Bonafe M, Monti D, Baggio G, Bertolini S, Mari D, Mattace R, Franceschi C. Mitochondrial DNA inherited variants are associated with successful aging and longevity in humans. *FASEB J* 1999; **13**: 1532-1536 [PMID: 10463944]
12 **Ivanova R**, Lepage V, Charron D, Schächter F. Mitochondrial genotype associated with French Caucasian centenarians. *Gerontology* 1998; **44**: 349 [PMID: 9813436]
13 **Bilal E**, Rabadan R, Alexe G, Fuku N, Ueno H, Nishigaki Y, Fujita Y, Ito M, Arai Y, Hirose N, Ruckenstein A, Bhanot G, Tanaka M. Mitochondrial DNA haplogroup D4a is a marker for extreme longevity in Japan. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e2421 [PMID: 18545700 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0002421]
14 **Alexe G**, Fuku N, Bilal E, Ueno H, Nishigaki Y, Fujita Y, Ito M, Arai Y, Hirose N, Bhanot G, Tanaka M. Enrichment of longevity phenotype in mtDNA haplogroups D4b2b, D4a, and D5 in the Japanese population. *Hum Genet* 2007; **121**: 347-356 [PMID: 17308896 DOI: 10.1007/s00439-007-0330-6]
15 **Castri L**, Melendez-Obando M, Villegas-Palma R, Barrantes R, Raventos H, Pereira R, Luiselli D, Pettener D, Madrigal L. Mitochondrial polymorphisms are associated both with increased and decreased longevity. *Hum Hered* 2009; **67**: 147-153 [PMID: 19077432 DOI: 10.1159/000181152]
16 **Raule N**, Sevini F, Li S, Barbieri A, Tallaro F, Lomartire L, Vianello D, Montesanto A, Moilanen JS, Bezrukov V, Blanché H, Hervonen A, Christensen K, Deiana L, Gonos ES, Kirkwood TB, Kristensen P, Leon A, Pelicci PG, Poulain M, Rea IM, Remacle J, Robine JM, Schreiber S, Sikora E, Eline Slagboom P, Spazzafumo L, Antonietta Stazi M, Toussaint O, Vaupel JW, Rose G, Majamaa K, Perola M, Johnson TE, Bolund L, Yang H, Passarino G, Franceschi C. The co-occurrence of mtDNA mutations on different oxidative phosphorylation subunits, not detected by haplogroup analysis, affects human longevity and is population specific. *Aging Cell* 2014; **13**: 401-407 [PMID: 24341918 DOI: 10.1111/acel.12186]
17 **Brand MD**. The sites and topology of mitochondrial superoxide production. *Exp Gerontol* 2010; **45**: 466-472 [PMID: 20064600 DOI: 10.1016/j.exger.2010.01.003]
18 **Boveris A**, Oshino N, Chance B. The cellular production of hydrogen peroxide. *Biochem J* 1972; **128**: 617-630 [PMID: 4404507]
19 **Andreyev AY**, Kushnareva YE, Starkov AA. Mitochondrial metabolism of reactive oxygen species. *Biochemistry* (Mosc) 2005; **70**: 200-214 [PMID: 15807660]
20 **Quinlan CL**, Goncalves RL, Hey-Mogensen M, Yadava N, Bunik VI, Brand MD. The 2-oxoacid dehydrogenase complexes in mitochondria can produce superoxide/hydrogen peroxide at much higher rates than complex I. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 8312-8325 [PMID: 24515115 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M113.545301]
21 **Brown GC**, Borutaite V. There is no evidence that mitochondria are the main source of reactive oxygen species in mammalian cells. *Mitochondrion* 2012; **12**: 1-4 [PMID: 21303703 DOI: 10.1016/j.mito.2011.02.001]
22 **Gardner PR**. Superoxide-driven aconitase FE-S center cycling. *Biosci Rep* 1997; **17**: 33-42 [PMID: 9171919]
23 **Gardner PR**, Fridovich I. Superoxide sensitivity of the Escherichia coli aconitase. *J Biol Chem* 1991; **266**: 19328-19333 [PMID: 1655783]
24 **Drechsel DA**, Patel M. Respiration-dependent H2O2 removal in brain mitochondria via the thioredoxin/peroxiredoxin system. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 27850-27858 [PMID: 20558743 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.101196]
25 **Iñarrea P**, Moini H, Han D, Rettori D, Aguiló I, Alava MA, Iturralde M, Cadenas E. Mitochondrial respiratory chain and thioredoxin reductase regulate intermembrane Cu,Zn-superoxide dismutase activity: implications for mitochondrial energy metabolism and apoptosis. *Biochem J* 2007; **405**: 173-179 [PMID: 17394422 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20061809]
26 **Henle ES**, Luo Y, Gassmann W, Linn S. Oxidative damage to DNA constituents by iron-mediated fenton reactions. The deoxyguanosine family. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 21177-21186 [PMID: 8702888]
27 **Henle ES**, Luo Y, Linn S. Fe2+, Fe3+, and oxygen react with DNA-derived radicals formed during iron-mediated Fenton

reactions. *Biochemistry* 1996; **35**: 12212-12219 [PMID: 8810929 DOI: 10.1021/bi961235j]
28 **Rhee SG**, Yang KS, Kang SW, Woo HA, Chang TS. Controlled elimination of intracellular H(2)O(2): regulation of peroxiredoxin, catalase, and glutathione peroxidase via post-translational modification. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2005; **7**: 619-626 [PMID: 15890005 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2005.7.619]
29 **Merry TL**, Tran M, Stathopoulos M, Wiede F, Fam BC, Dodd GT, Clarke I, Watt MJ, Andrikopoulos S, Tiganis T. High-fat-fed obese glutathione peroxidase 1-deficient mice exhibit defective insulin secretion but protection from hepatic steatosis and liver damage. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2014; **20**: 2114-2129 [PMID: 24252128 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2013.5428]
30 **Yoo SE**, Chen L, Na R, Liu Y, Rios C, Van Remmen H, Richardson A, Ran Q. Gpx4 ablation in adult mice results in a lethal phenotype accompanied by neuronal loss in brain. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2012; **52**: 1820-1827 [PMID: 22401858 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2012.02.043]
31 **Chang TS**, Cho CS, Park S, Yu S, Kang SW, Rhee SG. Peroxiredoxin III, a mitochondrion-specific peroxidase, regulates apoptotic signaling by mitochondria. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 41975-41984 [PMID: 15280382 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M407707200]
32 **Zhou Z**, Kang YJ. Cellular and subcellular localization of catalase in the heart of transgenic mice. *J Histochem Cytochem* 2000; **48**: 585-594 [PMID: 10769042]
33 **Halliwell B**, Aruoma OI. DNA damage by oxygen-derived species. Its mechanism and measurement in mammalian systems. *FEBS Lett* 1991; **281**: 9-19 [PMID: 1849843]
34 **Lesko SA**, Lorentzen RJ, Ts'o PO. Role of superoxide in deoxyribonucleic acid strand scission. *Biochemistry* 1980; **19**: 3023-3028 [PMID: 6249344]
35 **Rowley DA**, Halliwell B. DNA damage by superoxide-generating systems in relation to the mechanism of action of the anti-tumour antibiotic adriamycin. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1983; **761**: 86-93 [PMID: 6315070]
36 **Blakely WF**, Fuciarelli AF, Wegher BJ, Dizdaroglu M. Hydrogen peroxide-induced base damage in deoxyribonucleic acid. *Radiat Res* 1990; **121**: 338-343 [PMID: 2315450]
37 **Brawn K**, Fridovich I. DNA strand scission by enzymically generated oxygen radicals. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1981; **206**: 414-419 [PMID: 6261698]
38 **Moreira PI**, Nunomura A, Nakamura M, Takeda A, Shenk JC, Aliev G, Smith MA, Perry G. Nucleic acid oxidation in Alzheimer disease. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2008; **44**: 1493-1505 [PMID: 18258207 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2008.01.002]
39 **Santos RX**, Correia SC, Zhu X, Smith MA, Moreira PI, Castellani RJ, Nunomura A, Perry G. Mitochondrial DNA oxidative damage and repair in aging and Alzheimer's disease. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2013; **18**: 2444-2457 [PMID: 23216311 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2012.5039]
40 **Smith JB**, Cusumano JC, Babbs CF. Quantitative effects of iron chelators on hydroxyl radical production by the superoxide-driven fenton reaction. *Free Radic Res Commun* 1990; **8**: 101-106 [PMID: 2156748]
41 **Li L**, Abe Y, Kanagawa K, Shoji T, Mashino T, Mochizuki M, Tanaka M, Miyata N. Iron-chelating agents never suppress Fenton reaction but participate in quenching spin-trapped radicals. *Anal Chim Acta* 2007; **599**: 315-319 [PMID: 17870296 DOI: 10.1016/j.aca.2007.08.008]
42 **Moraes EC**, Keyse SM, Pidoux M, Tyrrell RM. The spectrum of mutations generated by passage of a hydrogen peroxide damaged shuttle vector plasmid through a mammalian host. *Nucleic Acids Res* 1989; **17**: 8301-8312 [PMID: 2682525]
43 **Brown WM**, George M, Wilson AC. Rapid evolution of animal mitochondrial DNA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1979; **76**: 1967-1971 [PMID: 109836]
44 **Tatarenkov A**, Avise JC. Rapid concerted evolution in animal mitochondrial DNA. *Proc Biol Sci* 2007; **274**: 1795-1798 [PMID: 17490947 DOI: 10.1098/rspb.2007.0169]
45 **Ballard JW**, Whitlock MC. The incomplete natural history of mitochondria. *Mol Ecol* 2004; **13**: 729-744 [PMID: 15012752]
46 **Alam TI**, Kanki T, Muta T, Ukaji K, Abe Y, Nakayama H, Takio K, Hamasaki N, Kang D. Human mitochondrial DNA is packaged with TFAM. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2003; **31**: 1640-1645 [PMID: 12626705]
47 **Thorslund T**, Sunesen M, Bohr VA, Stevnsner T. Repair of 8-oxoG is slower in endogenous nuclear genes than in mitochondrial DNA and is without strand bias. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2002; **1**: 261-273 [PMID: 12509245]
48 **Bendich AJ**. DNA abandonment and the mechanisms of uniparental inheritance of mitochondria and chloroplasts. *Chromosome Res* 2013; **21**: 287-296 [PMID: 23681660 DOI: 10.1007/s10577-013-9349-9]
49 **Bendich AJ**. Mitochondrial DNA, chloroplast DNA and the origins of development in eukaryotic organisms. *Biol Direct* 2010; **5**: 42 [PMID: 20587059 DOI: 10.1186/1745-6150-5-42]
50 **Shokolenko I**, Venediktova N, Bochkareva A, Wilson GL, Alexeyev MF. Oxidative stress induces degradation of mitochondrial DNA. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2009; **37**: 2539-2548 [PMID: 19264794 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkp100]
51 **Rothfuss O**, Gasser T, Patenge N. Analysis of differential DNA damage in the mitochondrial genome employing a semi-long run real-time PCR approach. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2010; **38**: e24 [PMID: 19966269 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkp1082]
52 **Furda AM**, Marrangoni AM, Lokshin A, Van Houten B. Oxidants and not alkylating agents induce rapid mtDNA loss and mitochondrial dysfunction. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2012; **11**: 684-692 [PMID: 22766155 DOI: 10.1016/j.dnarep.2012.06.002]
53 **Shokolenko IN**, Wilson GL, Alexeyev MF. Persistent damage induces mitochondrial DNA degradation. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2013; **12**: 488-499 [PMID: 23721969 DOI: 10.1016/j.dnarep.2013.04.023]
54 **Clayton DA**, Doda JN, Friedberg EC. The absence of a pyrimidine dimer repair mechanism in mammalian mitochondria. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1974; **71**: 2777-2781 [PMID: 4212385]
55 **Clayton DA**, Doda JN, Friedberg EC. Absence of a pyrimidine dimer repair mechanism for mitochondrial DNA in mouse and human cells. *Basic Life Sci* 1975; **5B**: 589-591 [PMID: 1238079]
56 **Richter C**, Park JW, Ames BN. Normal oxidative damage to mitochondrial and nuclear DNA is extensive. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988; **85**: 6465-6467 [PMID: 3413108]
57 **Helbock HJ**, Beckman KB, Shigenaga MK, Walter PB, Woodall AA, Yeo HC, Ames BN. DNA oxidation matters: the HPLC-electrochemical detection assay of 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine and 8-oxo-guanine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; **95**: 288-293 [PMID: 9419368]
58 **Anson RM**, Sentürker S, Dizdaroglu M, Bohr VA. Measurement of oxidatively induced base lesions in liver from Wistar rats of different ages. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1999; **27**: 456-462 [PMID: 10468222 DOI: S0891-5849(99)00091-X]
59 **Anson RM**, Hudson E, Bohr VA. Mitochondrial endogenous oxidative damage has been overestimated. *FASEB J* 2000; **14**: 355-360 [PMID: 10657991]
60 **Lim KS**, Jeyaseelan K, Whiteman M, Jenner A, Halliwell B. Oxidative damage in mitochondrial DNA is not extensive. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2005; **1042**: 210-220 [PMID: 15965065 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1338.023]
61 **Yakes FM**, Van Houten B. Mitochondrial DNA damage is more extensive and persists longer than nuclear DNA damage in human cells following oxidative stress. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 514-519 [PMID: 9012815]
62 **Itsara LS**, Kennedy SR, Fox EJ, Yu S, Hewitt JJ, Sanchez-Contreras M, Cardozo-Pelaez F, Pallanck LJ. Oxidative stress is not a major contributor to somatic mitochondrial DNA mutations. *PLoS Genet* 2014; **10**: e1003974 [PMID: 24516391 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1003974]
63 **Guo Y**, Cai Q, Samuels DC, Ye F, Long J, Li CI, Winther

JF, Tawn EJ, Stovall M, Lähteenmäki P, Malila N, Levy S, Shaffer C, Shyr Y, Shu XO, Boice JD. The use of next generation sequencing technology to study the effect of radiation therapy on mitochondrial DNA mutation. *Mutat Res* 2012; **744**: 154-160 [PMID: 22387842 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrgentox.2012.02.006]

64 **Greaves LC**, Elson JL, Nooteboom M, Grady JP, Taylor GA, Taylor RW, Mathers JC, Kirkwood TB, Turnbull DM. Comparison of mitochondrial mutation spectra in ageing human colonic epithelium and disease: absence of evidence for purifying selection in somatic mitochondrial DNA point mutations. *PLoS Genet* 2012; **8**: e1003082 [PMID: 23166522 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1003082]

65 **Stewart JB**, Freyer C, Elson JL, Wredenberg A, Cansu Z, Trifunovic A, Larsson NG. Strong purifying selection in transmission of mammalian mitochondrial DNA. *PLoS Biol* 2008; **6**: e10 [PMID: 18232733 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0060010]

66 **Kennedy SR**, Salk JJ, Schmitt MW, Loeb LA. Ultra-sensitive sequencing reveals an age-related increase in somatic mitochondrial mutations that are inconsistent with oxidative damage. *PLoS Genet* 2013; **9**: e1003794 [PMID: 24086148 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1003794]

67 **Termini J**. Hydroperoxide-induced DNA damage and mutations. *Mutat Res* 2000; **450**: 107-124 [PMID: 10838137]

68 **Wang D**, Kreutzer DA, Essigmann JM. Mutagenicity and repair of oxidative DNA damage: insights from studies using defined lesions. *Mutat Res* 1998; **400**: 99-115 [PMID: 9685598]

69 **Kamiya H**, Miura K, Ishikawa H, Inoue H, Nishimura S, Ohtsuka E. c-Ha-ras containing 8-hydroxyguanine at codon 12 induces point mutations at the modified and adjacent positions. *Cancer Res* 1992; **52**: 3483-3485 [PMID: 1596906]

70 **Akasaka S**, Yamamoto K. Hydrogen peroxide induces G: C to T: A and G: C to C: G transversions in the supF gene of Escherichia coli. *Mol Gen Genet* 1994; **243**: 500-505 [PMID: 8208241]

71 **Legros F**, Malka F, Frachon P, Lombès A, Rojo M. Organization and dynamics of human mitochondrial DNA. *J Cell Sci* 2004; **117**: 2653-2662 [PMID: 15138283 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.01134]

72 **Nakada K**, Sato A, Hayashi J. Mitochondrial functional complementation in mitochondrial DNA-based diseases. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2009; **41**: 1907-1913 [PMID: 19464386 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2009.05.010]

73 **Ono T**, Isobe K, Nakada K, Hayashi JI. Human cells are protected from mitochondrial dysfunction by complementation of DNA products in fused mitochondria. *Nat Genet* 2001; **28**: 272-275 [PMID: 11431699 DOI: 10.1038/90116]

74 **Nonaka I**. Mitochondrial diseases. *Curr Opin Neurol Neurosurg* 1992; **5**: 622-632 [PMID: 1392136]

75 **Taylor RW**, Turnbull DM. Mitochondrial DNA mutations in human disease. *Nat Rev Genet* 2005; **6**: 389-402 [PMID: 15861210 DOI: 10.1038/nrg1606]

76 **Kujoth GC**, Hiona A, Pugh TD, Someya S, Panzer K, Wohlgemuth SE, Hofer T, Seo AY, Sullivan R, Jobling WA, Morrow JD, Van Remmen H, Sedivy JM, Yamasoba T, Tanokura M, Weindruch R, Leeuwenburgh C, Prolla TA. Mitochondrial DNA mutations, oxidative stress, and apoptosis in mammalian aging. *Science* 2005; **309**: 481-484 [PMID: 16020738 DOI: 10.1126/science.1112125]

77 **Trifunovic A**, Wredenberg A, Falkenberg M, Spelbrink JN, Rovio AT, Bruder CE, Bohlooly-Y M, Gidlöf S, Oldfors A, Wibom R, Törnell J, Jacobs HT, Larsson NG. Premature ageing in mice expressing defective mitochondrial DNA polymerase. *Nature* 2004; **429**: 417-423 [PMID: 15164064 DOI: 10.1038/nature02517]

78 **Vermulst M**, Bielas JH, Kujoth GC, Ladiges WC, Rabinovitch PS, Prolla TA, Loeb LA. Mitochondrial point mutations do not limit the natural lifespan of mice. *Nat Genet* 2007; **39**: 540-543 [PMID: 17334366 DOI: 10.1038/ng1988]

79 **Khrapko K**, Kraytsberg Y, de Grey AD, Vijg J, Schon EA. Does premature aging of the mtDNA mutator mouse prove that mtDNA mutations are involved in natural aging? *Aging Cell* 2006; **5**: 279-282 [PMID: 16842501 DOI: 10.1111/j.1474-9726.2006.00209.x]

80 **Song X**, Deng JH, Liu CJ, Bai Y. Specific point mutations may not accumulate with aging in the mouse mitochondrial DNA control region. *Gene* 2005; **350**: 193-199 [PMID: 15829427 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2005.02.008]

81 **Elson JL**, Samuels DC, Turnbull DM, Chinnery PF. Random intracellular drift explains the clonal expansion of mitochondrial DNA mutations with age. *Am J Hum Genet* 2001; **68**: 802-806 [PMID: 11179029 DOI: 10.1086/318801]

82 **Taylor RW**, Barron MJ, Borthwick GM, Gospel A, Chinnery PF, Samuels DC, Taylor GA, Plusa SM, Needham SJ, Greaves LC, Kirkwood TB, Turnbull DM. Mitochondrial DNA mutations in human colonic crypt stem cells. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112**: 1351-1360 [PMID: 14597761 DOI: 10.1172/JCI19435]

83 **Wallace DC**. Mitochondria and cancer: Warburg addressed. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol* 2005; **70**: 363-374 [PMID: 16869773 DOI: 10.1101/sqb.2005.70.035]

84 **Mattiazzi M**, Vijayvergiya C, Gajewski CD, DeVivo DC, Lenaz G, Wiedmann M, Manfredi G. The mtDNA T8993G (NARP) mutation results in an impairment of oxidative phosphorylation that can be improved by antioxidants. *Hum Mol Genet* 2004; **13**: 869-879 [PMID: 14998933 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/ddh103]

85 **Trifunovic A**, Hansson A, Wredenberg A, Rovio AT, Dufour E, Khvorostov I, Spelbrink JN, Wibom R, Jacobs HT, Larsson NG. Somatic mtDNA mutations cause aging phenotypes without affecting reactive oxygen species production. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 17993-17998 [PMID: 16332961 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0508886102]

86 **Tengan CH**, Gabbai AA, Shanske S, Zeviani M, Moraes CT. Oxidative phosphorylation dysfunction does not increase the rate of accumulation of age-related mtDNA deletions in skeletal muscle. *Mutat Res* 1997; **379**: 1-11 [PMID: 9330617]

87 **Pamplona R**, Costantini D. Molecular and structural antioxidant defenses against oxidative stress in animals. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 2011; **301**: R843-R863 [PMID: 21775650 DOI: 10.1152/ajpregu.00034.2011]

88 **Andziak B**, O'Connor TP, Buffenstein R. Antioxidants do not explain the disparate longevity between mice and the longest-living rodent, the naked mole-rat. *Mech Ageing Dev* 2005; **126**: 1206-1212 [PMID: 16087218 DOI: 10.1016/j.mad.2005.06.009]

89 **Lewis KN**, Andziak B, Yang T, Buffenstein R. The naked mole-rat response to oxidative stress: just deal with it. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2013; **19**: 1388-1399 [PMID: 23025341 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2012.4911]

90 **Van Raamsdonk JM**, Hekimi S. Deletion of the mitochondrial superoxide dismutase sod-2 extends lifespan in Caenorhabditis elegans. *PLoS Genet* 2009; **5**: e1000361 [PMID: 19197346 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1000361]

91 **Van Raamsdonk JM**, Hekimi S. Superoxide dismutase is dispensable for normal animal lifespan. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 5785-5790 [PMID: 22451939 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1116158109]

92 **Ranjan M**, Gruber J, Ng LF, Halliwell B. Repression of the mitochondrial peroxiredoxin antioxidant system does not shorten life span but causes reduced fitness in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2013; **63**: 381-389 [PMID: 23722165 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2013.05.025]

93 **Lapointe J**, Hekimi S. Early mitochondrial dysfunction in long-lived Mclk1+/- mice. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 26217-26227 [PMID: 18635541 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M803287200]

94 **Hekimi S**, Lapointe J, Wen Y. Taking a "good" look at free radicals in the aging process. *Trends Cell Biol* 2011; **21**: 569-576 [PMID: 21824781 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2011.06.008]

95 **Hekimi S.** Enhanced immunity in slowly aging mutant mice

with high mitochondrial oxidative stress. *Oncoimmunology* 2013; **2**: e23793 [PMID: 23734326 DOI: 10.4161/onci.23793]
96 **Mockett RJ**, Bayne AC, Kwong LK, Orr WC, Sohal RS. Ectopic expression of catalase in Drosophila mitochondria increases stress resistance but not longevity. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2003; **34**: 207-217 [PMID: 12521602]
97 **Schriner SE**, Linford NJ, Martin GM, Treuting P, Ogburn CE, Emond M, Coskun PE, Ladiges W, Wolf N, Van Remmen H, Wallace DC, Rabinovitch PS. Extension of murine life span by overexpression of catalase targeted to mitochondria. *Science* 2005; **308**: 1909-1911 [PMID: 15879174 DOI: 10.1126/science.1106653]
98 **Lakowski B**, Hekimi S. Determination of life-span in Caenorhabditis elegans by four clock genes. *Science* 1996; **272**: 1010-1013 [PMID: 8638122]
99 **Howes RM**. The free radical fantasy: a panoply of paradoxes. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2006; **1067**: 22-26 [PMID: 16803966 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1354.004]
100 **Bjelakovic G**, Nikolova D, Gluud C. Antioxidant supplements to prevent mortality. *JAMA* 2013; **310**: 1178-1179 [PMID: 24045742 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2013.277028]
101 **Barja G**. Aging in vertebrates, and the effect of caloric restriction: a mitochondrial free radical production-DNA damage mechanism? *Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc* 2004; **79**: 235-251 [PMID: 15191224]
102 **Liao CY**, Rikke BA, Johnson TE, Diaz V, Nelson JF. Genetic variation in the murine lifespan response to dietary restriction: from life extension to life shortening. *Aging Cell* 2010; **9**: 92-95 [PMID: 19878144 DOI: 10.1111/j.1474-9726.2009.00533.x]
103 **Mattison JA**, Roth GS, Beasley TM, Tilmont EM, Handy AM, Herbert RL, Longo DL, Allison DB, Young JE, Bryant M, Barnard D, Ward WF, Qi W, Ingram DK, de Cabo R. Impact of caloric restriction on health and survival in rhesus monkeys from the NIA study. *Nature* 2012; **489**: 318-321 [PMID: 22932268 DOI: 10.1038/nature11432]
104 **Austad SN**. Ageing: Mixed results for dieting monkeys. *Nature* 2012; **489**: 210-211 [PMID: 22932269 DOI: 10.1038/nature11484]
105 **Ross JM**, Stewart JB, Hagström E, Brené S, Mourier A, Coppotelli G, Freyer C, Lagouge M, Hoffer BJ, Olson L, Larsson NG. Germline mitochondrial DNA mutations aggravate ageing and can impair brain development. *Nature* 2013; **501**: 412-415 [PMID: 23965628 DOI: 10.1038/nature12474]
106 **European Standards Committee on Oxidative DNA Damage (ESCODD).** Measurement of DNA oxidation in human cells by chromatographic and enzymic methods. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2003; **34**: 1089-1099 [PMID: 12684094]
107 **Gedik CM**, Collins A. Establishing the background level of base oxidation in human lymphocyte DNA: results of an interlaboratory validation study. *FASEB J* 2005; **19**: 82-84 [PMID: 15533950 DOI: 10.1096/fj.04-1767fje]
108 **de Souza-Pinto NC**, Eide L, Hogue BA, Thybo T, Stevnsner T, Seeberg E, Klungland A, Bohr VA. Repair of 8-oxodeoxyguanosine lesions in mitochondrial dna depends on the oxoguanine dna glycosylase (OGG1) gene and 8-oxoguanine accumulates in the mitochondrial dna of OGG1-defective mice. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 5378-5381 [PMID: 11454679]
109 **Trapp C**, McCullough AK, Epe B. The basal levels of 8-oxoG and other oxidative modifications in intact mitochondrial DNA are low even in repair-deficient (Ogg1(-/-)/Csb(-/-)) mice. *Mutat Res* 2007; **625**: 155-163 [PMID: 17675188 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2007.06.006]

P- Reviewer: Lee HC **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Lu YJ

World Journal of Experimental Medicine

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v4.i4.58

World J Exp Med 2014 November 20; 4(4): 58-67
ISSN 2220-315X (online)

REVIEW

Combinations of vascular endothelial growth factor pathway inhibitors with metronomic chemotherapy: Rational and current status

Antonia Digklia, Ioannis A Voutsadakis

Antonia Digklia, Department of Medical Oncology, University Hospital of Lausanne, 1011 Lausanne, Switzerland
Ioannis A Voutsadakis, Division of Medical Oncology, Department of Internal Medicine, Sault Area Hospital, Sault Sainte Marie, Ontario, ON P6B 0A8, Canada
Ioannis A Voutsadakis, Division of Clinical Sciences, Northern Ontario School of Medicine, Sudbury, Ontario, ON P6B 0A8, Canada
Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Ioannis A Voutsadakis, MD, PhD, Division of Medical Oncology, Department of Internal Medicine, Sault Area Hospital, Sault Ste Marie, ON P6B 0A8, Canada. ivoutsadakis@yahoo.com
Telephone: +1-705-7593434 Fax: +1-705-7593815
Received: June 11, 2014 Revised: July 16, 2014
Accepted: September 6, 2014
Published online: November 20, 2014

Abstract

Chemotherapy given in a metronomic manner can be administered with less adverse effects which are common with conventional schedules such as myelotoxicity and gastrointestinal toxicity and thus may be appropriate for older patients and patients with decreased performance status. Efficacy has been observed in several settings. An opportunity to improve the efficacy of metronomic schedules without significantly increasing toxicity presents with the addition of anti-angiogenic targeted treatments. These combinations rational stems from the understanding of the importance of angiogenesis in the mechanism of action of metronomic chemotherapy which may be augmented by specific targeting of the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) pathway by antibodies or small tyrosine kinase inhibitors. Combinations of metronomic chemotherapy schedules with VEGF pathway targeting drugs will be discussed in this paper.

Key words: Metronomic chemotherapy; Vascular endothelial growth factor; Angiogenesis; Bevacizumab; Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor

Core tip: Metronomic chemotherapy has the potential to reduce the toxicity of chemotherapy administered with conventional schedules. In addition, understanding of the importance of angiogenesis in the mechanism of action of metronomic schedules provides a rational to combine this type of administration with targeted agents against the vascular endothelial growth factor signaling pathway.

Digklia A, Voutsadakis IA. Combinations of vascular endothelial growth factor pathway inhibitors with metronomic chemotherapy: Rational and current status. *World J Exp Med* 2014; 4(4): 58-67 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-315X/full/v4/i4/58.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5493/wjem.v4.i4.58

INTRODUCTION

Metronomic chemotherapy is defined as a chemotherapy treatment that is given more often but in lower doses than conventional chemotherapy[1]. The different administration schedule results in differences in pharmacokinetics of the given drugs and in general lower peak concentrations but more protracted trough concentrations. These pharmacokinetic differences may have implications for anti-tumor efficacy but equally importantly for adverse effects and tolerability of chemotherapy drugs.

Vascular endothelial growth factor receptors (VEGFRs) are a family of tyrosine kinase cell surface receptors that includes VEGFR-1 (also called Flt-1), VEGFR-2 (also called KDR), VEGFR-3 and the two neuropilin co-receptors NRP-1 and NRP-2. These are ligated by six secreted glucoprotein ligands VEGF-A to -E and PIGF

(Placenta Growth Factor). Ligation of the receptors triggers activation of down-stream cascades that include the Ras-Raf-MAPK and the PI3K-Akt pathways. VEGFR signaling leads to loosening of the inter-cellular junctions of endothelial cells and contributes to increased motility and eventually results in promotion of angiogenesis and vascular permeability[2]. The VEGFR system has a physiologic role during development that is usurped by tumors. Hypoxia in the tumor micro-environment is a well-known inducer of VEGF. Its expression is up-regulated by transcription factor [hypoxia-induced factor (HIF)], a factor consisting of two sub-units HIF-1α or HIF-2α and HIF-β. The β sub-unit is constitutively expressed and the α sub-units are up-regulated by hypoxia through a mechanism involving hypoxia-promoted protein stabilization. Hypoxia prevents proline hydroxylation of HIF-α factors interfering with their interaction with ubiquitin ligase (Von Hippel Lindau) and thus prevents them from being ubiquitinated and degraded in the proteasome[3]. As a result HIF-α factors concentration is increased and in association with HIF-β may initiate transcription of more than a hundred target genes, such as VEGF[4]. Other tumor associated events, such as tumor suppressor p53 inactivation and proliferation-promoting cascades activation, induce VEGF.

In this paper we will review the current data on combinations of VEGF and VEGFR inhibitors with metronomic chemotherapeutics in cancer. Drugs that affect other components of the angiogenesis network or inhibit angiogenesis indirectly may constitute rational partners for development in combination with metronomic chemotherapy but will not be discussed here.

COMMONLY USED METRONOMIC CHEMOTHERAPIES

Metronomic chemotherapy that comprises the backbone of combinations with anti-angiogenic agents is most often given in an oral form and thus availability of an oral form of various chemotherapeutics has dictated the development of such combinations, given the considerable greater ease and practicability of administering lower closely spaced in time (*e.g.,* daily) doses by mouth instead of intravenously. All these oral drugs have been developed as monotherapies or combinations with classic chemotherapy drugs previously and have a well-characterized safety profile when used in conventional doses and schedules. Data also exist for metronomic schedules, although in general less extensive than for conventional schedules. Some intravenous (IV) chemotherapy drugs given in lower doses and more frequently schedules, usually weekly, instead of three-weekly, can be considered metronomic.

Most commonly used oral chemotherapies include oral forms of cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, vinorelbine, etoposide and topotecan, the oral alkylator temozolamide and the oral fluoropyrimidines capecitabine and tegafur in combination with uracil. Metronomic oral cyclophosphamide is most commonly dosed at 50 mg per day instead of the more conventional dose of 100 mg/m^2 per day for 14 d every 4 wk incorporated, for example, in one of the versions of CMF and 600 mg/m^2 IV every 3 wk in another CMF version[5,6]. Metronomic oral methotrexate has been used often in combination with metronomic cyclophosphamide in metastatic breast cancer at a dose of 2.5 mg twice weekly as compared with the dose of 40 mg/m^2 of the classic CMF (of note this dose is considered "low" compared to "intermediate" and "high" doses in the grams range used in the treatment of sarcomas and acute leukemias and requiring folinic acid rescue)[7,8]. A usual dose of oral daily etoposide is 50 mg and a proposed dose of daily oral topotecan is 0.8 mg/m^2[9]. A commonly used metronomic dose of temozolomide is 75 mg/m^2 continuously daily compared with 150-200 mg/m^2 for 5 consecutive days every 4 wk that is a more conventional dose[10]. Of interest, the metronomic administration is part of a first line standard regimen in glioblastoma multiforme in combination with radiation therapy[10].

Metronomic administration of chemotherapy has essentially a lower incidence of some of the most serious and problematic adverse effects of conventional doses of chemotherapeutics such as myelotoxicity and serious gastrointestinal toxicity. In many cases metronomic chemotherapy produces significantly less alopecia that, although not life-threatening, is impacting in patients' quality of life.

TARGETED AGENTS AGAINST VEGF AND VEGFRS

The first anti-angiogenic agent targeting the VEGF-A ligand that entered the clinical arena was the recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody bevacizumab. Activity has been shown mainly in combination with classic chemotherapy agents in a variety of tumors such as colorectal cancer, glioblastoma multiforme, ovarian cancer and carcinomas of the lung[11-14]. Not surprisingly bevacizumab is the agent targeting the VEGF/ VEGFR axis most extensively studied also in combination with metronomic chemotherapy.

An agent targeting the VEGF ligand, that was more recently developed, is the VEGF trap aflibercept. This molecule consists of the second immunoglobulin domain of VEGFR-1, the third immunoglobulin domain of VEGFR-2 and the Fc (constant region) of IgG1 type human immunoglobulins. The construct functions as a decoy receptor that captures circulating VEGF-A and PlGF, preventing them from binding and activating their receptors[15]. Aflibercept has been approved for the treatment of metastatic colorectal carcinoma in combination with the FOLFIRI regimen[16] but has not been studied clinically in combination with metronomic schedules.

An increasing number of small molecules tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) blocking VEGFRs have gained approval for diverse indications and have entered the

clinic. They are less specific than monoclonal antibodies and tend to block other tyrosine kinase receptors and even non-receptor kinases with varying degrees of affinity. The TKI regorafenib, for example, that is approved for the third line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer, inhibits, in addition to VEGFR, PDGF, FGFR, C-kit, Ret, BRAF and TIE-2[17]. TKIs sunitinib and pazopanib, approved for the treatment of renal cell carcinoma inhibit, in addition to VEGFR, PDGFR and C-kit, while sorafenib, another TKI also approved for the treatment of renal cell carcinoma as well as for hepatocellular carcinoma, inhibits, in addition to these three receptors, non-receptor kinase BRAF[18].

Targeted agents have a different toxicity profile from chemotherapy in general and metronomic administration in particular. A side effect peculiar to all VEGF pathway blocking agents is hypertension[19]. Skin reactions, hypothyroidism and blood coagulation complications are also other adverse effects.

RATIONAL FOR THE COMBINATION

Metronomic chemotherapy is believed to act against cancer cells in an indirect way through anti-angiogenic actions as well as through immune-mediated effects. An experimental demonstration of the importance of angiogenesis for tumor propagation in mice was obtained by using low dose metronomic cyclophosphamide. In these classic experiments metronomic cyclophosphamide inhibited angiogenesis *in vivo* and induced apoptosis of endothelial cells in a mouse experimental model[20]. This was followed by apoptosis of the human drug-resistant leukemia and lung cancer cell xenografts. Combined treatment of mice with metronomic cyclophosphamide and an angiogenesis inhibitor, TNP-470, resulted in complete eradication of drug-resistant human xenografts. Metronomic schedule consisted of cyclophosphamide 170 mg/kg every 6 d while the classic dose was 150 mg/kg in days 1, 3 and 5 every 3 wk. The effect of metronomic doses of vinblastine has been studied in human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC). Doses of 0.25-1 pM of the drug produced significant decrease in the angiogenic phenotype (proliferation, chemotaxis and adhesion to extracellular matrix components) without an increase in apoptosis of HUVEC[21]. These experiments argue for the relevance of angiogenesis in the effects of metronomic chemotherapy schedules and, in addition, offer the first evidence for the value of adding a targeted angiogenesis inhibitor.

An additional mechanism of anti-tumor action of metronomic chemotherapy is promotion of the immune response against cancer cells. In a model of tumor bearing mice, metronomic paclitaxel was demonstrated to enhance immune responses obtained with immunization with a DNA vaccine against chimeric CTGF/E7[22]. Another study of metronomic cyclophosphamide in mice bearing xenografts of glial origin or syngeneic tumors confirmed an anti-tumor activity that was dependent on recruitment of immune cells in the tumor[23]. Mice with a severe combined immunodeficiency background or defects on perforin could not mount an anti-tumor response to metronomic cyclophosphamide. In addition treatment with a more conventional intermittent schedule of cyclophosphamide produced a weaker and transient immune activation, a fact interpreted by the authors to denote a need for a more sustained immune stimulation for effective immune response production[23]. Interestingly, in this study, combined treatment with inhibitors of VEGFR axitinib, cediranib and AG-028262 and metronomic cyclophosphamide interfered with the ability of the latter to recruit immune cells to the tumors and decreased the response to it. Immune mediated activity of metronomic chemotherapy appears to be particularly dependent on doses and frequency of the used drugs, at least in pre-clinical mouse models[24]. Work from the same laboratory has shown that, in contrast to immune interference, anti-VEGFR agents may have synergistic anti-tumor effects with metronomic chemotherapy by promoting tumor retention of active metabolites such as 4-hydroxy-cyclophosphamide and, at least partially counteracting, the deleterious effect on anti-tumor immunogenicity[25]. In discordance with the above pre-clinical data arguing for a role of metronomic schedules in triggering anti-tumor immunity, a small clinical study of patients with diverse types of cancer treated with conventional or metronomic schedules of chemotherapy has reported an increase in the ratio of regulatory T cells to effector T cells in both types of schedules but this increase was more pronounced with metronomic schedules[26]. Regulatory T cells may blunt the anti-tumor response of the immune system against tumor cells. The study did not aim to compare the implications of these immune effects on clinical outcomes and, in any case, this would be impossible given the small number of patients across different tumor types and different drugs used[26]. Overall the involvement of an immune response to the anti-tumor effect of metronomic schedules of chemotherapy is far from clear but the addition of VEGF pathway-targeting agents could theoretically improve this immune effect by normalizing the tumor vasculature network and thus improving immune cell access to the tumor by preventing the formation of the pathologic tumor-associated convoluted vessel network. This is due to the fact that morphologically abnormal glomeruloid microvascular proliferations and bridged mother vessels remain dependent on VEGF-A signaling after their formation while feeder arteries, draining veins and capillaries in the tumor beds become VEGF signaling-independent[27].

PRE-CLINICAL EVALUATION

Consolidating the above rational, additional pre-clinical evaluation of combinations of metronomic chemotherapies with anti-VEGF targeted agents has been undertaken.

A human xenograft model of neuroblastoma in SCID mice was used to investigate the effect of combination

treatment of metronomic vinblastine with DC101, an anti-VEGFR2 antibody[28]. Each drug alone produced only a transient tumor inhibition. In contrast the combination resulted in sustained xenograft growth inhibition with no signs of resistance development up to seven months on treatment. In addition, some of the animals were followed after discontinuation of the combination treatment and showed no evidence of tumor recurrence. Treatment was well-tolerated and mice did not display any of the usual signs of toxicity such as weight loss, anorexia, dehydration or skin ulcerations. In agreement with the clinical effect, the combination showed more pronounced apoptotic cell death and angiogenesis inhibition than control or monotherapy treatment in histopathologic sections examination[28].

The same investigators expanded the above findings to a human orthotopic breast cancer model of cell lines MDA-MB-231 and MDA-MB-435 and multidrug resistant derivative lines expressing multidrug resistance pgp glucoprotein[29]. Continuous low dose of vinblastine, cisplatin or doxorubicin in combination with the same anti-VEGFR2 antibody resulted in improved and sustained anti-tumor effects compared with the chemotherapeutics alone while the antibody by itself had an intermediate effect.

Human colorectal cancer cell line KM12SM growing as xenograft in nude mice was investigated as a target of conventionally-dosed irinotecan or the same drug given in a metronomic schedule with or without bevacizumab[30]. Both treatments including metronomic irinotecan (with or without bevacizumab) resulted in greater anti-angiogenic effects compared with conventional schedule as measured by microvessel density and CD31 immunostaining and were better tolerated as measured by a decreased weight loss. Moreover the addition of bevacizumab appeared to act additively to metronomic irinotecan further delaying tumor growth compared with irinotecan monotherapy[30].

Another gastrointestinal tumor studied in a preclinical human xenograft model in mice is pancreatic cancer[31]. In this case the combination of metronomic schedule gemcitabine with sunitinib had specific efficacy in decreasing metastatic progression while its effect on the primary tumors was less than the effect with conventional maximal tolerated gemcitabine schedule.

Still in the realm of gastrointestinal tumor models, human hepatocellular cancer xenografts of the Hep3B cell line were studied in immunocompromised mice[32]. Treatment with sorafenib, a drug that is used clinically in the treatment of the disease, eventually led to tumor resistance and increase in tumor burden despite continuous treatment. Co-administration of a metronomic dose of UFT (15 mg/kg per day continuously) could delay the development of resistance and prolong the median survival of mice from less than 3 to 4.5 mo without increased toxicity[32]. In another study from the same group, orthotopically implanted hepatocellular carcinoma xenografts of the same cell line Hep3B were more efficiently controlled by the combination of metronomic UFT or cyclophosphamide and the anti-VEGFR2 antibody DC101 than with either agents alone[33].

In mice bearing human prostate cancer and rat gliosarcoma cell line xenografts, the VEGFR inhibitor axitinib in combination with metronomic cyclophosphamide displayed improved anti-tumor activity in comparison with either drug alone and this despite decreased tumor uptake of the active cyclophosphamide metabolite 4-hydroxy-cyclophosphamide[34,35]. Axitinib was found to possess, in addition to anti-angiogenic, direct anti-tumor cell effects inducing tumor cell apoptosis and this may relate to the fact that it is, similarly to other TKIs, an inhibitor of pathways other than VEGF, as mentioned previously[35].

Ovarian cancer was the subject of a study combining oral topotecan with pazopanib[36]. Topotecan has activity and is currently used clinically in the treatment of this type of cancer while anti-angiogenesis is also a proven beneficial modality for ovarian cancer and thus the combination is of particular clinical interest. Mice bearing human ovarian cancer xenografts in their peritoneal cavity were treated with either drug alone or their combination. Metronomic oral topotecan plus pazopanib was more effective than topotecan alone in maximal tolerated dose or pazopanib alone in reducing tumor burden and in prolonging the survival of the tumor-bearing mice[36]. Similar conclusions were reached in another study of the same combination using additional ovarian cell line xenografts[37].

In conclusion, extensive pre-clinical evidence pinpoints to the activity of metronomic chemotherapy/anti-VEGF pathway inhibitors combinations in a variety of tumor types. This together with the variety of chemotherapeutics and VEGF-targeting agents used in these combinations and producing the same synergistic effect argues for a mechanism that is independent of the specific tumor and underlying molecular lesions that it bears and is consistent with an anti-angiogenic and immune mediated mechanism.

CLINICAL STUDIES

Glioblastoma multiforme (GBM) is the most common and most aggressive malignant primary brain tumor for which the median survival with trimodality treatment followed by temozolomide maintenance is 15 mo with less than 10% of patients alive at 5 years[10]. Since several preclinical models showed up-regulation of VEGF in GBM cell lines, targeting angiogenesis has been a subject of several clinical trials that led to the approval of bevacizumab as monotherapy for recurrent GBM[38]. Few of these studies attempt to explore the role of metronomic chemotherapy in combination with angiogenic agents in this context and have attempted to bring these combinations in the forefront of GBM therapeutics.

In the front line treatment, two phase Ⅲ randomized trials showed that incorporation of bevacizumab

to the traditional radio-chemotherapy regimen with temozolomide followed by bevacizumab until progression improves the PFS, but without any benefit in OS[39]. The Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG) 0825 trial included 637 patients who were randomized to receive standard chemo-radiotherapy with temozolamide plus either placebo or bevacizumab (10 mg/kg every 2 wk)[39]. All patients had a Karnofsky Performance Scale score of at least 60. There was no statistically significant benefit of the addition of bevacizumab for the OS (15.7 mo *vs* 16.1 mo, $P = 0.21$) but a significant benefit for the PFS (10.7 mo *vs* 7.3 mo, $P = 0.007$) was noted. It is important to note that patients from the placebo group were allowed to cross over at progression, which may explain the lack of benefit in OS.

AVAglio was an industry-sponsored study conducted mainly in Europe[14]. It had a similar design that included provision to crossover on progression. It randomized 921 patients and, similarly to RTOG 0825, showed a PFS benefit for the addition of bevacizumab (10.6 mo *vs* 6.2 mo, $P < 0.001$) but failed to show an OS benefit (16.8 mo *vs* 16.7 mo, $P = 0.10$). The two trials showed contrasting results regarding quality of life (Qol) effect of bevacizumab. In the RTOG study addition of bevacizumab worsened patient neurocognitive function, while AVAglio showed improvement of Qol, prolonged time to Karnofsky Performance Scale score worsening, as well as delay in the initiation of corticosteroid treatment. One possible reason for this discrepancy between the two trials is that the AVAglio study did not incorporate a measure of neurocognitive functioning into its evaluation for Qol outcomes.

Based on the fact of failure to demonstrate benefit in terms of OS, several oncologists believe that there are not enough data to support addition of bevacizumab in front line therapy and reserve its use in large, bulky tumors with significant associated edema. Currently, Japan is the only country to approve the addition of bevacizumab in newly diagnosed GBM (http://www.roche.com/media/ media_releases/med-cor-2013-06-17.htm).

In recurrent GBM, phase Ⅱ studies have demonstrated response rates of 63% and 6 mo PFS of 38% to 46% when bevacizumab is combined with metronomic irinotecan adjusted according to whether patients were taking metabolic enzyme-inducing anticonvulsants[40,41]. In another phase Ⅱ study response rate was 47.3%, including 2 patients with complete response[42]. A phase Ⅱ trial evaluating biweekly bevacizumab with metronomic etoposide in recurrent malignant glioma[43] included 27 (of 59 total) patients with GBM. The six months PFS was 44.4%, but the toxicity was increased with the combination compared with previous reports of bevacizumab monotherapy. Interestingly low expression of VEGF in tumors assessed by immunohistochemistry was correlated with poorer PFS[43]. Another phase Ⅱ trial closed at the interim analysis as the addition of bevacizumab on metronomic chemotherapy (temozolomide or etoposide) was found to be ineffective[44].

There are limited data concerning VEGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors in GBM. A phase Ⅱ trial has showed that the combination of sorafenib with temozolamide in recurrent GBM in 43 naïve patients for anti-angiogenic treatment is feasible and safe[45]. Twenty-three out of 43 patients had radiologically stable disease or a partial response and the median PFS was 3.2 mo and the median OS was 7.4 mo. Of note, 11% of patients suffered from a grade 3-4 hand foot syndrome.

In ovarian cancer, the activity of anti-angiogenic therapy with bevacizumab is well documented both as monotherapy (RR 21% in a phase Ⅱ study[46]) and as combination with chemotherapy. Several trials[12,47] have shown a clear benefit in PFS after incorporation of anti-angiogenesis therapy in the management of newly diagnosed advanced ovarian cancer treated with carboplatin and paclitaxel, making it a standard of care option in 1st line.

The concept of metronomic treatment with antiangiogenic therapy has been well studied in case of platinum resistant recurrent patients. A randomized phase III study comparing chemotherapy (weekly paclitaxel, weekly topotecan or liposomal doxorubicin) to chemotherapy plus bevacizumab confirmed the benefit of the combination with doubling of median PFS (6.7 mo *vs* 3.4 mo)[48]. Mature OS data presented in ESMO 2013 congress did not show statistically significant OS benefit of the combination ($P = 0.174$), despite a 3 mo survival advantage of the bevacizumab arm (13.3 mo *vs* 16.6 mo)[49]. Interestingly, in the subgroup analysis a more pronounced impact was noticed when the bevacizumab was combined with weekly paclitaxel (13.2 mo *vs* 22.4 mo), a chemotherapy regimen with anti-angiogenic activity, supporting the idea of the efficacy of the concept[49].

Moreover, a recent retrospective trial of bevacizumab and oral metronomic cyclophosphamide in heavily pretreated platinum resistant ovarian cancer, with 66 patients, has shown that the combination is active with a response rate of 42.4%[50].

The activity of weekly topotecan and biweekly bevacizumab in ovarian cancer has been shown in a trial of bevacizumab 10 mg/kg administered on days 1 and 15 and topotecan 4 mg/m^2 on days 1, 8, and 15 of a 28-d cycle until progressive disease (PD) or excessive toxicity[51]. Median PFS and OS were 7.8 and 16.6 mo respectively, with 22 of 40 (55%) of the patients being progression-free for ⩾ 6 mo. Ten (25%) patients had a partial response (PR), 14 (35%) had stable disease (SD), and 16 (40%) had PD.

A phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ study of sorafenib associated with weekly topotecan in patients with platinum-resistant ovarian cancer or primary peritoneal carcinomatosis has shown some efficacy[52]. In this study, 16 patients were enrolled in a phase Ⅰ part and 14 patients in a phase Ⅱ part. The phase Ⅱ regimen consisted of sorafenib 400 mg daily and topotecan 3.5 mg/m^2 weekly on days 1, 8, 15 of a 28 d cycle. There were 5 PR (16.7%), and 14 patients (46.7%) with SD. Nevertheless, the combination of sorafenib and topotecan caused significant toxicity.

Other studies are ongoing evaluating combinations of therapies targeting the VEGF pathway and metronomic chemotherapy in ovarian cancer. For example, a German phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ trial combines metronomic cyclophosphamide with pazopanib[53] and a phase Ⅱ study to open in United Kingdom (NCT01610869) will combine nintedanib (formerly BIBF 1120, a receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor blocking signaling through VEGFR, PDGFR, and FGFR, also investigated in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis[54]) and metronomic daily cyclophosphamide in patients with multiply-relapsed advanced ovarian cancer.

In breast cancer, a phase Ⅱ study of 46 patients (19 of whom had previous chemotherapy for metastatic disease) investigated the combination of metronomic cyclophosphamide at a dose of 50 mg daily with capecitabine 500 mg three times daily and bevacizumab 10 mg/kg every two weeks[55]. It showed a response rate of 48% and a clinical benefit rate of 68%. The clinical benefit was more pronounced in hormone receptors positive disease. The treatment was very well tolerated with the only grade 3 or higher adverse effect occurring in more than 10% of patients being hypertension[55]. The same investigators added erlotinib to the above combination in patients with metastatic breast cancer poorly expressing hormone receptors and negative for Her-2 and observed a response rate of 62%[56].

A phase I study with 20 metastatic breast cancer patients and up to four previous lines of treatment associated metronomic cyclophosphamide 50 mg daily with methotrexate 2.5 mg 2 d per week and vandetanib found to have a maximal tolerated dose of 200 mg daily[57]. Toxicity was acceptable and the clinical benefit rate was 25%. A similar combination with cyclophosphamide and methotrexate as the metronomic chemotherapy backbone and bevacizumab instead of vandetanib produced a clinical benefit rate of 31.8% in another study[58].

Several studies have been published showing clinical activity of metronomic schedules in advanced stage non-small cell lung cancer with acceptable toxicity profile. Data on combinations with anti-angiogenic treatments are less abundant and few studies have been published and few are ongoing. A phase Ⅱ study published only in abstract form so far presented data on the combination of two chemotherapeutics at metronomic doses (paclitaxel 80 mg/m^2 weekly three weeks out of four and gemcitabine 200-300 mg/m^2 also weekly three weeks out of four) with bevacizumab (10 mg/kg biweekly). Maintenance bevacizumab was an option for patients with a good tolerance and no progression. The trial showed a median OS of 30 mo and a 2-year OS of 55% in advanced non-squamous lung cancer[59].

A small pilot phase Ⅱ study combined a metronomic oral chemotherapy part of etoposide at 50 mg per day for 14 d of a 21 d cycle and bevacizumab at 5 mg/kg with a more intense part of cisplatin at a dose of 30 mg/m^2 for 3 consecutive days. This was followed by maintenance of erlotinib and bevacizumab in case of stable disease or response[60]. The combination demonstrated a 69% partial response rate and 86% disease control rate (partial response or stable disease). The PFS was 9.53 mo. Toxicity was also significant as expected from a regimen with a more intense component and included grade 3 or 4 myelotoxicity in 15% of patients and grade 3 or 4 GI toxicity in 18%[60].

A phase I study of the combination of metronomic vinorelbine at a starting dose of 40 mg three times per week with sorafenib (NCT00870532) has been completed but results have not been published yet.

Clinical data from studies in other tumor types, although less abundant, also confirm the concept of the combination. A study of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and Child-Pugh class A liver function combined sorafenib with metronomic tegafur-uracil and showed a clinical benefit rate of 57%[61]. In a study of metastatic colorectal cancer patients who had at least two previous lines of therapy, the combination of cyclophosphamide 50 mg daily with imatinib 400 mg daily and bevacizumab 5 mg/kg every 2 wk was well tolerated and led to prolonged (more than 6 mo) stabilization of the disease in 20% of patients[62]. In a small study that included 15 patients with malignant neuroendocrine tumors mainly of gastrointestinal origin, the combination of temozolomide 100 mg daily with a long acting somatostatin analogue and bevacizumab produced a 64% response rate and 86% clinical benefit rate[63].

THE WAY AHEAD: PREDICTION OF RESPONSE

As witnessed by other cancer treatments such as anti-Her2 antibodies, the presence of a robust biomarker of response greatly facilitates the development and establishment of a drug in the clinic. The absence of such confirmed biomarkers for anti-VEGF treatments and for metronomic chemotherapy hampers their development in the clinic and has certainly contributed to negative results of trials in some type of cancers and moderating their success in others. Extensive investigations on discovering such biomarkers have not succeeded in bringing any biomarker forward to clinical applicability so far. Initial exploratory investigation on the predictive value of VEGF single nucleotide polymorphisms identified two minor alleles associated with bevacizumab response in a breast cancer population but this was not consistently seen in another study also in breast cancer[64]. Circulating stem or endothelial progenitor cells and MRI imaging parameters have been proposed as markers of response to sorafenib and bevacizumab[65,66]. The previously discussed report on metronomic cyclophosphamide, capecitabine and bevacizumab in breast cancer found a higher response of this treatment in patients with higher baseline circulating endothelial cells[55]. K-ras mutations, which predict for lack of response to EGFR targeting therapies in metastatic colorectal cancer, are not predictive of response to bevacizumab despite k-ras being also part of one of the intracellular signal cascades triggered by VEGFR[67]. This

argues for the importance of indirect mechanisms in the cytotoxicity of VEGF treatments. Prediction of which patient will respond to a given metronomic chemotherapy treatment is similarly currently unfeasible.

Another interesting biomarker that has been proposed as a predictor of response to bevacizumab is thrombocytosis[68]. This is a well validated laboratory value already routinely used in the clinic and has been associated with adverse outcomes in a variety of tumor types[69-72]. Interleukin-6 (IL-6), a thrombopoiesis-promoting cytokine, production by the tumor is implicated in the induction of thrombocytosis[70]. IL-6 is concomitantly an angiogenesis-promoting cytokine and thus its presence may denote a particular angiogenic propensity of tumors and dependence, as a result, to angiogenic pathways. In addition, platelets contribute to this effect by carrying additional pro-angiogenic substances in their granules[73]. As a result their number in a particular patient may represent a marker of the tumor dependency to a combination of treatments such as anti-VEGF and metronomic chemotherapy that rely on inhibition of angiogenesis as a mechanism of their action. Platelet proteome has been reported to change after treatment with metronomic cyclophosphamide, methotrexate and vandetanib[58] but it is unknown if the baseline status of this proteome predict for response to treatment. Platelet number and content represent interesting predictive markers for further investigation for the combination. Confirmation of their value and discovery of other useful predictive biomarkers will certainly facilitate a wider adoption of combinations of VEGF therapies and metronomic chemotherapy that could be a valuable option especially in later line of therapy where lower toxicity therapies are needed to fit with the profile of patients with lower performance statuses.

REFERENCES

1 **Romiti A**, Cox MC, Sarcina I, Di Rocco R, D'Antonio C, Barucca V, Marchetti P. Metronomic chemotherapy for cancer treatment: a decade of clinical studies. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2013; **72**: 13-33 [PMID: 23475105 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-013-2125-x]

2 **Esser S**, Lampugnani MG, Corada M, Dejana E, Risau W. Vascular endothelial growth factor induces VE-cadherin tyrosine phosphorylation in endothelial cells. *J Cell Sci* 1998; **111** (Pt 13): 1853-1865 [PMID: 9625748]

3 **Shen C**, Kaelin WG. The VHL/HIF axis in clear cell renal carcinoma. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2013; **23**: 18-25 [PMID: 22705278 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcancer.2012.06.001]

4 **Li M**, Kim WY. Two sides to every story: the HIF-dependent and HIF-independent functions of pVHL. *J Cell Mol Med* 2011; **15**: 187-195 [PMID: 21155973 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2010.01238.x]

5 **Hutchins LF**, Green SJ, Ravdin PM, Lew D, Martino S, Abeloff M, Lyss AP, Allred C, Rivkin SE, Osborne CK. Randomized, controlled trial of cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluorouracil versus cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and fluorouracil with and without tamoxifen for high-risk, node-negative breast cancer: treatment results of Intergroup Protocol INT-0102. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 8313-8321 [PMID: 16293862 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.08.071]

6 **Weiss RB**, Valagussa P, Moliterni A, Zambetti M, Buzzoni R, Bonadonna G. Adjuvant chemotherapy after conservative surgery plus irradiation versus modified radical mastectomy. Analysis of drug dosing and toxicity. *Am J Med* 1987; **83**: 455-463 [PMID: 3116847 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(87)90755-8]

7 **Gebbia V**, Boussen H, Valerio MR. Oral metronomic cyclophosphamide with and without methotrexate as palliative treatment for patients with metastatic breast carcinoma. *Anticancer Res* 2012; **32**: 529-536 [PMID: 22287742]

8 **Orlando L**, Cardillo A, Ghisini R, Rocca A, Balduzzi A, Torrisi R, Peruzzotti G, Goldhirsch A, Pietri E, Colleoni M. Trastuzumab in combination with metronomic cyclophosphamide and methotrexate in patients with HER-2 positive metastatic breast cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2006; **6**: 225 [PMID: 16978400 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-6-225]

9 **Minturn JE**, Janss AJ, Fisher PG, Allen JC, Patti R, Phillips PC, Belasco JB. A phase II study of metronomic oral topotecan for recurrent childhood brain tumors. *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 2011; **56**: 39-44 [PMID: 21108437 DOI: 10.1002/pbc.22690]

10 **Stupp R**, Mason WP, van den Bent MJ, Weller M, Fisher B, Taphoorn MJ, Belanger K, Brandes AA, Marosi C, Bogdahn U, Curschmann J, Janzer RC, Ludwin SK, Gorlia T, Allgeier A, Lacombe D, Cairncross JG, Eisenhauer E, Mirimanoff RO. Radiotherapy plus concomitant and adjuvant temozolomide for glioblastoma. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 987-996 [PMID: 15758009 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa043330]

11 **Hurwitz H**, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny W, Cartwright T, Hainsworth J, Heim W, Berlin J, Baron A, Griffing S, Holmgren E, Ferrara N, Fyfe G, Rogers B, Ross R, Kabbinavar F. Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 2335-2342 [PMID: 15175435 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa032691]

12 **Perren TJ**, Swart AM, Pfisterer J, Ledermann JA, Pujade-Lauraine E, Kristensen G, Carey MS, Beale P, Cervantes A, Kurzeder C, du Bois A, Sehouli J, Kimmig R, Stähle A, Collinson F, Essapen S, Gourley C, Lortholary A, Selle F, Mirza MR, Leminen A, Plante M, Stark D, Qian W, Parmar MK, Oza AM. A phase 3 trial of bevacizumab in ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 2484-2496 [PMID: 22204725 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1103799]

13 **Sandler A**, Gray R, Perry MC, Brahmer J, Schiller JH, Dowlati A, Lilenbaum R, Johnson DH. Paclitaxel-carboplatin alone or with bevacizumab for non-small-cell lung cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 2542-2550 [PMID: 17167137 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061884]

14 **Chinot OL**, Wick W, Mason W, Henriksson R, Saran F, Nishikawa R, Carpentier AF, Hoang-Xuan K, Kavan P, Cernea D, Brandes AA, Hilton M, Abrey L, Cloughesy T. Bevacizumab plus radiotherapy-temozolomide for newly diagnosed glioblastoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 709-722 [PMID: 24552318 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1308345]

15 **Patel A**, Sun W. Ziv-aflibercept in metastatic colorectal cancer. *Biologics* 2014; **8**: 13-25 [PMID: 24368879]

16 **Tabernero J**, Van Cutsem E, Lakomý R, Prausová J, Ruff P, van Hazel GA, Moiseyenko VM, Ferry DR, McKendrick JJ, Soussan-Lazard K, Chevalier S, Allegra CJ. Aflibercept versus placebo in combination with fluorouracil, leucovorin and irinotecan in the treatment of previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer: prespecified subgroup analyses from the VELOUR trial. *Eur J Cancer* 2014; **50**: 320-331 [PMID: 24140268 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2013.09.013]

17 **Festino L**, Fabozzi A, Manzo A, Gambardella V, Martinelli E, Troiani T, De Vita F, Orditura M, Ciardiello F, Morgillo F. Critical appraisal of the use of regorafenib in the management of colorectal cancer. *Cancer Manag Res* 2013; **5**: 49-55 [PMID: 23610528]

18 **Reardon DA**, Turner S, Peters KB, Desjardins A, Gururangan S, Sampson JH, McLendon RE, Herndon JE, Jones LW, Kirkpatrick JP, Friedman AH, Vredenburgh JJ, Bigner DD, Friedman HS. A review of VEGF/VEGFR-targeted thera-

peutics for recurrent glioblastoma. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2011; **9**: 414-427 [PMID: 21464146]

19 **Cohen RB**, Oudard S. Antiangiogenic therapy for advanced renal cell carcinoma: management of treatment-related toxicities. *Invest New Drugs* 2012; **30**: 2066-2079 [PMID: 22327313 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-012-9796-8]

20 **Browder T**, Butterfield CE, Kräling BM, Shi B, Marshall B, O'Reilly MS, Folkman J. Antiangiogenic scheduling of chemotherapy improves efficacy against experimental drug-resistant cancer. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 1878-1886 [PMID: 10766175]

21 **Vacca A**, Iurlaro M, Ribatti D, Minischetti M, Nico B, Ria R, Pellegrino A, Dammacco F. Antiangiogenesis is produced by nontoxic doses of vinblastine. *Blood* 1999; **94**: 4143-4155 [PMID: 10590059]

22 **Chen CA**, Ho CM, Chang MC, Sun WZ, Chen YL, Chiang YC, Syu MH, Hsieh CY, Cheng WF. Metronomic chemotherapy enhances antitumor effects of cancer vaccine by depleting regulatory T lymphocytes and inhibiting tumor angiogenesis. *Mol Ther* 2010; **18**: 1233-1243 [PMID: 20372107 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2010.34]

23 **Doloff JC**, Waxman DJ. VEGF receptor inhibitors block the ability of metronomically dosed cyclophosphamide to activate innate immunity-induced tumor regression. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: 1103-1115 [PMID: 22237627 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-3380]

24 **Chen CS**, Doloff JC, Waxman DJ. Intermittent metronomic drug schedule is essential for activating antitumor innate immunity and tumor xenograft regression. *Neoplasia* 2014; **16**: 84-96 [PMID: 24563621]

25 **Ma J**, Chen CS, Blute T, Waxman DJ. Antiangiogenesis enhances intratumoral drug retention. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 2675-2685 [PMID: 21447737 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-3242]

26 **Koumarianou A**, Christodoulou MI, Patapis P, Papadopoulos I, Liakata E, Giagini A, Stavropoulou A, Poulakaki N, Tountas N, Xiros N, Economopoulos T, Pectasides D, Tsitsilonis OE, Pappa V. The effect of metronomic versus standard chemotherapy on the regulatory to effector T-cell equilibrium in cancer patients. *Exp Hematol Oncol* 2014; **3**: 3 [PMID: 24456704 DOI: 10.1186/2162-3619-3-3]

27 **Sitohy B**, Nagy JA, Dvorak HF. Anti-VEGF/VEGFR therapy for cancer: reassessing the target. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: 1909-1914 [PMID: 22508695 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-3406]

28 **Klement G**, Baruchel S, Rak J, Man S, Clark K, Hicklin DJ, Bohlen P, Kerbel RS. Continuous low-dose therapy with vinblastine and VEGF receptor-2 antibody induces sustained tumor regression without overt toxicity. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **105**: R15-R24 [PMID: 10772661 DOI: 10.1172/JCI8829]

29 **Klement G**, Huang P, Mayer B, Green SK, Man S, Bohlen P, Hicklin D, Kerbel RS. Differences in therapeutic indexes of combination metronomic chemotherapy and an anti-VEGFR-2 antibody in multidrug-resistant human breast cancer xenografts. *Clin Cancer Res* 2002; **8**: 221-232 [PMID: 11801563]

30 **Murakami H,** Ogata Y, Akagi Y, Ishibashi N, Shirouzu K. Circulating endothelial progenitor cells in metronomic chemotherapy using irinotecan and/or bevacizumab for colon carcinoma: Study of their clinical significance. *Exp Ther Med* 2011; **2**: 595-600 [PMID: 22977546]

31 **Tran Cao HS**, Bouvet M, Kaushal S, Keleman A, Romney E, Kim G, Fruehauf J, Imagawa DK, Hoffman RM, Katz MH. Metronomic gemcitabine in combination with sunitinib inhibits multisite metastasis and increases survival in an orthotopic model of pancreatic cancer. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2010; **9**: 2068-2078 [PMID: 20606044 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-10-0201]

32 **Tang TC**, Man S, Xu P, Francia G, Hashimoto K, Emmenegger U, Kerbel RS. Development of a resistance-like phenotype to sorafenib by human hepatocellular carcinoma cells is reversible and can be delayed by metronomic UFT chemotherapy. *Neoplasia* 2010; **12**: 928-940 [PMID: 21076618]

33 **Tang TC**, Man S, Lee CR, Xu P, Kerbel RS. Impact of metronomic UFT/cyclophosphamide chemotherapy and antiangiogenic drug assessed in a new preclinical model of locally advanced orthotopic hepatocellular carcinoma. *Neoplasia* 2010; **12**: 264-274 [PMID: 20234820]

34 **Ma J**, Waxman DJ. Dominant effect of antiangiogenesis in combination therapy involving cyclophosphamide and axitinib. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 578-588 [PMID: 19147763 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1174]

35 **Ma J**, Waxman DJ. Modulation of the antitumor activity of metronomic cyclophosphamide by the angiogenesis inhibitor axitinib. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2008; **7**: 79-89 [PMID: 18202011 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-07-0584]

36 **Hashimoto K**, Man S, Xu P, Cruz-Munoz W, Tang T, Kumar R, Kerbel RS. Potent preclinical impact of metronomic low-dose oral topotecan combined with the antiangiogenic drug pazopanib for the treatment of ovarian cancer. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2010; **9**: 996-1006 [PMID: 20371722 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-09-0960]

37 **Merritt WM**, Nick AM, Carroll AR, Lu C, Matsuo K, Dumble M, Jennings N, Zhang S, Lin YG, Spannuth WA, Kamat AA, Stone RL, Shahzad MM, Coleman RL, Kumar R, Sood AK. Bridging the gap between cytotoxic and biologic therapy with metronomic topotecan and pazopanib in ovarian cancer. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2010; **9**: 985-995 [PMID: 20371710 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-09-0967]

38 **Cohen MH**, Shen YL, Keegan P, Pazdur R. FDA drug approval summary: bevacizumab (Avastin) as treatment of recurrent glioblastoma multiforme. *Oncologist* 2009; **14**: 1131-1138 [PMID: 19897538 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2009-0121]

39 **Gilbert MR**, Dignam JJ, Armstrong TS, Wefel JS, Blumenthal DT, Vogelbaum MA, Colman H, Chakravarti A, Pugh S, Won M, Jeraj R, Brown PD, Jaeckle KA, Schiff D, Stieber VW, Brachman DG, Werner-Wasik M, Tremont-Lukats IW, Sulman EP, Aldape KD, Curran WJ, Mehta MP. A randomized trial of bevacizumab for newly diagnosed glioblastoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 699-708 [PMID: 24552317 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1308573]

40 **Vredenburgh JJ**, Desjardins A, Herndon JE, Dowell JM, Reardon DA, Quinn JA, Rich JN, Sathornsumetee S, Gururangan S, Wagner M, Bigner DD, Friedman AH, Friedman HS. Phase II trial of bevacizumab and irinotecan in recurrent malignant glioma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **13**: 1253-1259 [PMID: 17317837 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-2309]

41 **Vredenburgh JJ**, Desjardins A, Herndon JE, Marcello J, Reardon DA, Quinn JA, Rich JN, Sathornsumetee S, Gururangan S, Sampson J, Wagner M, Bailey L, Bigner DD, Friedman AH, Friedman HS. Bevacizumab plus irinotecan in recurrent glioblastoma multiforme. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 4722-4729 [PMID: 17947719 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.12.2440]

42 **Bokstein F**, Shpigel S, Blumenthal DT. Treatment with bevacizumab and irinotecan for recurrent high-grade glial tumors. *Cancer* 2008; **112**: 2267-2273 [PMID: 18327820 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.23401]

43 **Reardon DA**, Desjardins A, Vredenburgh JJ, Gururangan S, Sampson JH, Sathornsumetee S, McLendon RE, Herndon JE, Marcello JE, Norfleet J, Friedman AH, Bigner DD, Friedman HS. Metronomic chemotherapy with daily, oral etoposide plus bevacizumab for recurrent malignant glioma: a phase II study. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **101**: 1986-1994 [PMID: 19920819 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605412]

44 **Reardon DA**, Desjardins A, Peters K, Gururangan S, Sampson J, Rich JN, McLendon R, Herndon JE, Marcello J, Threatt S, Friedman AH, Vredenburgh JJ, Friedman HS. Phase II study of metronomic chemotherapy with bevacizumab for recurrent glioblastoma after progression on bevacizumab therapy. *J Neurooncol* 2011; **103**: 371-379 [PMID: 20853132

DOI: 10.1007/s11060-010-0403-6]
45 **Zustovich F**, Landi L, Lombardi G, Porta C, Galli L, Fontana A, Amoroso D, Galli C, Andreuccetti M, Falcone A, Zagonel V. Sorafenib plus daily low-dose temozolomide for relapsed glioblastoma: a phase II study. *Anticancer Res* 2013; **33**: 3487-3494 [PMID: 23898124]
46 **Burger RA**, Sill MW, Monk BJ, Greer BE, Sorosky JI. Phase II trial of bevacizumab in persistent or recurrent epithelial ovarian cancer or primary peritoneal cancer: a Gynecologic Oncology Group Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 5165-5171 [PMID: 18024863 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.11.5345]
47 **Burger RA**, Brady MF, Bookman MA, Fleming GF, Monk BJ, Huang H, Mannel RS, Homesley HD, Fowler J, Greer BE, Boente M, Birrer MJ, Liang SX. Incorporation of bevacizumab in the primary treatment of ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 2473-2483 [PMID: 22204724 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1104390]
48 **Pujade-Lauraine E**, Hilpert F, Weber B, Reuss A, Poveda A, Kristensen G, Sorio R, Vergote I, Witteveen P, Bamias A, Pereira D, Wimberger P, Oaknin A, Mirza MR, Follana P, Bollag D, Ray-Coquard I. Bevacizumab combined with chemotherapy for platinum-resistant recurrent ovarian cancer: The AURELIA open-label randomized phase III trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 1302-1308 [PMID: 24637997 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.51.4489]
49 **Witteveen P**, Lortholary A, Fehm T, Poveda A, Reuss A, Havsteen H, Raspagliesi F, Vergote I, Bamias A, Pujade-Lauraine E, on behalf of the AURELIA investigators. Final overall survival results from AURELIA, an open-label randomized phase III trial of chemotherapy with or without bevacizumab for platinum-resistant recurrent ovarian cancer (abstract). ECCO Congress; 2013. Available from: URL: http://www.poster-submission.com/board
50 **Barber EL**, Zsiros E, Lurain JR, Rademaker A, Schink JC, Neubauer NL. The combination of intravenous bevacizumab and metronomic oral cyclophosphamide is an effective regimen for platinum-resistant recurrent ovarian cancer. *J Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **24**: 258-264 [PMID: 23875076]
51 **McGonigle KF**, Muntz HG, Vuky J, Paley PJ, Veljovich DS, Greer BE, Goff BA, Gray HJ, Malpass TW. Combined weekly topotecan and biweekly bevacizumab in women with platinum-resistant ovarian, peritoneal, or fallopian tube cancer: results of a phase 2 study. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 3731-3740 [PMID: 21815133 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25967]
52 **Ramasubbaiah R**, Perkins SM, Schilder J, Whalen C, Johnson CS, Callahan M, Jones T, Sutton G, Matei D. Sorafenib in combination with weekly topotecan in recurrent ovarian cancer, a phase I/II study of the Hoosier Oncology Group. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **123**: 499-504 [PMID: 21955480 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.08.033]
53 **Eichbaum M**, Mayer C, Eickhoff R, Bischofs E, Gebauer G, Fehm T, Lenz F, Fricke HC, Solomayer E, Fersis N, Schmidt M, Wallwiener M, Schneeweiss A, Sohn C. The PACOVAR-trial: a phase I/II study of pazopanib (GW786034) and cyclophosphamide in patients with platinum-resistant recurrent, pre-treated ovarian cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2011; **11**: 453 [PMID: 22014006 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-11-453]
54 **Richeldi L**, du Bois RM, Raghu G, Azuma A, Brown KK, Costabel U, Cottin V, Flaherty KR, Hansell DM, Inoue Y, Kim DS, Kolb M, Nicholson AG, Noble PW, Selman M, Taniguchi H, Brun M, Le Maulf F, Girard M, Stowasser S, Schlenker-Herceg R, Disse B, Collard HR. Efficacy and safety of nintedanib in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 2071-2082 [PMID: 24836310 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402584]
55 **Dellapasqua S**, Bertolini F, Bagnardi V, Campagnoli E, Scarano E, Torrisi R, Shaked Y, Mancuso P, Goldhirsch A, Rocca A, Pietri E, Colleoni M. Metronomic cyclophosphamide and capecitabine combined with bevacizumab in advanced breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 4899-4905 [PMID: 18794539 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.17.4789]
56 **Montagna E**, Cancello G, Bagnardi V, Pastrello D, Dellapasqua S, Perri G, Viale G, Veronesi P, Luini A, Intra M, Calleri A, Rampinelli C, Goldhirsch A, Bertolini F, Colleoni M. Metronomic chemotherapy combined with bevacizumab and erlotinib in patients with metastatic HER2-negative breast cancer: clinical and biological activity. *Clin Breast Cancer* 2012; **12**: 207-214 [PMID: 22520733 DOI: 10.1016/j.clbc.2012.03.008]
57 **Mayer EL**, Isakoff SJ, Klement G, Downing SR, Chen WY, Hannagan K, Gelman R, Winer EP, Burstein HJ. Combination antiangiogenic therapy in advanced breast cancer: a phase 1 trial of vandetanib, a VEGFR inhibitor, and metronomic chemotherapy, with correlative platelet proteomics. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **136**: 169-178 [PMID: 23001754 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012-2256-5]
58 **García-Sáenz JA**, Martín M, Calles A, Bueno C, Rodríguez L, Bobokova J, Custodio A, Casado A, Díaz-Rubio E. Bevacizumab in combination with metronomic chemotherapy in patients with anthracycline- and taxane-refractory breast cancer. *J Chemother* 2008; **20**: 632-639 [PMID: 19028628 DOI: 10.1179/joc.2008.20.5.632]
59 **Marquette CL**, Grant SC, DeShazo M, Reddy V, Cantor A, Miley D, Jerome M, Robert F. Phase II study of metronomic chemotherapy (MC) with bevacizumab (B) in patients with advanced nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NS-NSCLC). *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31** (suppl): abstr. 8057
60 **Correale P**, Botta C, Basile A, Pagliuchi M, Licchetta A, Martellucci I, Bestoso E, Apollinari S, Addeo R, Misso G, Romano O, Abbruzzese A, Lamberti M, Luzzi L, Gotti G, Rotundo MS, Caraglia M, Tagliaferri P. Phase II trial of bevacizumab and dose/dense chemotherapy with cisplatin and metronomic daily oral etoposide in advanced non-small-cell-lung cancer patients. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2011; **12**: 112-118 [PMID: 21525780 DOI: 10.4161/cbt.12.2.15722]
61 **Hsu CH**, Shen YC, Lin ZZ, Chen PJ, Shao YY, Ding YH, Hsu C, Cheng AL. Phase II study of combining sorafenib with metronomic tegafur/uracil for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 126-131 [PMID: 20416968 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.01.035]
62 **Kelley RK**, Hwang J, Magbanua MJ, Watt L, Beumer JH, Christner SM, Baruchel S, Wu B, Fong L, Yeh BM, Moore AP, Ko AH, Korn WM, Rajpal S, Park JW, Tempero MA, Venook AP, Bergsland EK. A phase 1 trial of imatinib, bevacizumab, and metronomic cyclophosphamide in advanced colorectal cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2013; **109**: 1725-1734 [PMID: 24022191 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2013.553]
63 **Koumarianou A**, Antoniou S, Kanakis G, Economopoulos N, Rontogianni D, Ntavatzikos A, Tsavaris N, Pectasides D, Dimitriadis G, Kaltsas G. Combination treatment with metronomic temozolomide, bevacizumab and long-acting octreotide for malignant neuroendocrine tumours. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2012; **19**: L1-L4 [PMID: 22232542]
64 **Schneider BP**, Shen F, Miller KD. Pharmacogenetic biomarkers for the prediction of response to antiangiogenic treatment. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: e427-e436 [PMID: 23026828]
65 **Najafi M**, Soltanian-Zadeh H, Jafari-Khouzani K, Scarpace L, Mikkelsen T. Prediction of glioblastoma multiform response to bevacizumab treatment using multi-parametric MRI. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e29945 [PMID: 22253835]
66 **Vroling L**, Lind JS, de Haas RR, Verheul HM, van Hinsbergh VW, Broxterman HJ, Smit EF. CD133+ circulating haematopoietic progenitor cells predict for response to sorafenib plus erlotinib in non-small cell lung cancer patients. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **102**: 268-275 [PMID: 20010948 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605477]
67 **Rossi L**, Veltri E, Zullo A, Zoratto F, Colonna M, Longo F, Mottolese M, Giannarelli D, Ruco L, Marchetti P, Romiti A, Barucca V, Giannini G, Bianchi L, Tomao S. Metastatic colorectal cancer first-line treatment with bevacizumab: the impact of K-ras mutation. *Onco Targets Ther* 2013; **6**:

1761-1769 [PMID: 24348051 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S43828]
68 **Heng DY**, Mackenzie MJ, Vaishampayan UN, Bjarnason GA, Knox JJ, Tan MH, Wood L, Wang Y, Kollmannsberger C, North S, Donskov F, Rini BI, Choueiri TK. Primary anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-refractory metastatic renal cell carcinoma: clinical characteristics, risk factors, and subsequent therapy. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 1549-1555 [PMID: 22056973 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdr533]
69 **Voutsadakis IA**. Thrombocytosis as a prognostic marker in gastrointestinal cancers. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2014; **6**: 34-40 [PMID: 24567794 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v6.i2.34]
70 **Stone RL**, Nick AM, McNeish IA, Balkwill F, Han HD, Bottsford-Miller J, Rupairmoole R, Armaiz-Pena GN, Pecot CV, Coward J, Deavers MT, Vasquez HG, Urbauer D, Landen CN, Hu W, Gershenson H, Matsuo K, Shahzad MM, King ER, Tekedereli I, Ozpolat B, Ahn EH, Bond VK, Wang R, Drew AF, Gushiken F, Lamkin D, Collins K, DeGeest K, Lutgendorf SK, Chiu W, Lopez-Berestein G, Afshar-Kharghan V, Sood AK. Paraneoplastic thrombocytosis in ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 610-618 [PMID: 22335738 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1110352]
71 **Stravodimou A**, Voutsadakis IA. Pretreatment thrombocytosis as a prognostic factor in metastatic breast cancer. *Int J Breast Cancer* 2013; **2013**: 289563 [PMID: 23864954]
72 **Todenhöfer T,** Renninger M, Schwentner C, Stenzl A, Gakis G. A new prognostic model for cancer-specific survival after redical cystectomy including pretreatment thrombocytosis and standard pathological risk factors. *Br J Urol Int* 2012; **110**: E533-E540
73 **Gay LJ**, Felding-Habermann B. Contribution of platelets to tumour metastasis. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2011; **11**: 123-134 [PMID: 21258396 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3004]

P- Reviewer: Akbulut S, Korpanty G **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Lu YJ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com